
Library of Congress Rule Interpretations
Second Edition, 1989
2006, Update Number 3

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
1.0	Revised to document the change in LC's serial cataloging practice	Replace p. 7-10
1.0C	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy and to correct examples	Replace p. 3-24
1.0E	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace p. 1-2
1.6	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy, to move guidance on sources to LCRI 1.6A2, and to move guidance on number of headings to LCRI 21.30L	Replace
1.6A2	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy and to add guidance on sources from LCRI 1.6	Replace
1.6B	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
1.6G	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
1.6G1	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
1.6G2	Deleted; covered by LCRI 1.0C	Remove
1.6H	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
1.6J	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
2.5B9	Revised to clarify provisions for LC copy cataloging	Replace
2.5C2	Revised to clarify provisions for LC copy cataloging	Replace
12.0	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy and to clarify wording on LC's practice for records for updating loose-leaves	Replace p. 5-8
12.6B1	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
13.3	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
21.2A1	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
21.2C	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace

Highlights

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
21.3A2	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
21.29	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
21.30G	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
21.30L	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy and to move guidelines on number of records from LCRI 1.6	Replace
22.1B	Revised to correct rule reference	Replace p. 1-2
22.8A1	Revised to correct examples	Replace
25.1	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace p. 3-4
25.5B	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy, including exception to consult SARS when determining conflict to ensure controlled access to related entries	Replace
25.5B, Appendix I	Revised to clarify some notes.	Replace p. 5-28
25.8	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace p. 1-2
25.13	Revised for clarification	Replace
25.34B1	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
26.4B	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace p. 7-8
26.5A	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
26.5B	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
B.5	Revised to reflect change in LC's series policy	Replace
C.8	Revised to clarify guidelines	Replace
Current LCRI		Replace
Index		Replace p. 3-4, 7-8, 19-20, 23-24, 47-50, 53-54, 77-80

1.0. DECISIONS BEFORE CATALOGING.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

What Is Being Cataloged?

Type of Issuance

Monograph vs. Serial

Situations Requiring Further Consideration

- 1) Electronic resources
- 2) Resources issued in loose-leaf format
- 3) Conference publications
- 4) Supplements
- 5) Republications
- 6) Printed travel guides
- 7) Certain other printed resources

Edition or Copy of Monograph

Change in Cataloging Decision: Monograph/ Serial

Change in Type of Issuance

Initial Articles

What Is Being Cataloged?

This section represents *LC/PCC practice*.

Before creating a bibliographic record, determine what is being cataloged. Answer these two questions:

- 1) What aspect of the bibliographic resource will the bibliographic record represent?
 - a) A resource may not be part of a larger resource and so the bibliographic record can represent only that resource.
 - b) A resource may be part of a larger resource (one part of a multipart item, one analytic of a monographic series, one of several separate resources on a Web site, etc.). The bibliographic record could represent the “smaller” or the “larger” resource.
-

c) A resource may not be part of a larger resource but local cataloging policies may specify creating a bibliographic record for a made-up larger resource of materials that are not published, distributed, or produced together.¹

2) What is the type of issuance of that aspect?

a) See both the definitions from AACR2 appendix D and the diagram in “Type of Issuance” below.

b) If the situation is still not clear, then consider the guidelines given in two other sections of this LCRI: “Monograph vs. Serial” and “Situations Requiring Further Consideration.”

c) See the section “Edition or Copy of Monograph” for guidelines about creating separate records for monographs.

It may be appropriate, after one or more bibliographic records have been cataloged, to change the cataloging decision (e.g., recatalog a monograph as a serial). See the section “Change in Cataloging Decision” for guidelines.

Also, a publisher may change the type of issuance of a bibliographic resource. See the last section, “Change in Type of Issuance,” for guidelines.

Type of Issuance

This section represents *LC/PCC practice*.

“Type of issuance” refers to how the bibliographic resource is published, distributed, or produced and, if it is updated, how it is updated. There are three types of issuance: monograph, serial, and integrating resource. (See the definitions from AACR2 appendix D and diagram below.)

Monograph: A bibliographic resource that is complete in one part or intended to be completed in a finite number of parts. The separate parts may or may not be numbered.

Use rules in chapter 1 and the chapter(s) representing the carrier.

Serial: A continuing resource issued in a succession of discrete parts, usually bearing numbering, that has no predetermined conclusion.

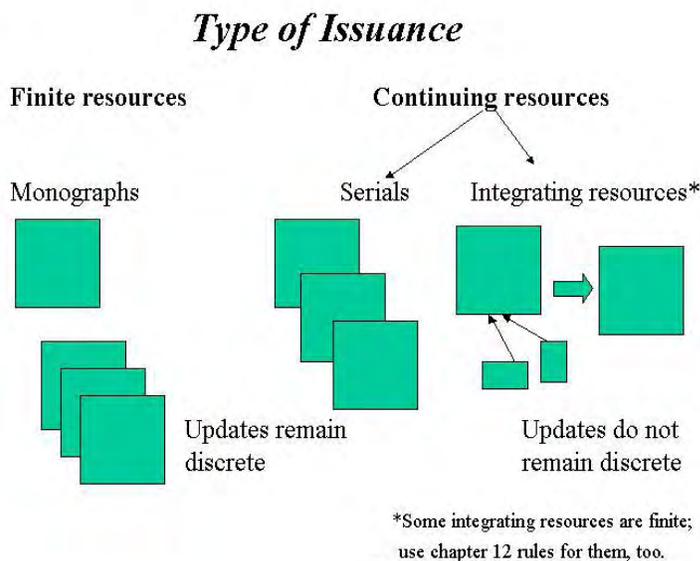
Use rules in chapter 1, chapter 12, and the chapter(s) representing the carrier.

Integrating resource: A bibliographic resource that is added to or changed by means of

¹These guidelines do not address the cataloging of such a made-up larger resource. *LC catalogers*: See DCM C14 for collection-level cataloging guidelines; see DCM C12.7 for guidelines for 2A cataloging (creation of a collected set record for an unnumbered multipart item).

updates that do not remain discrete and are integrated into the whole. Integrating resources can be finite or continuing.

Use rules in chapter 1, chapter 12, and the chapter(s) representing the carrier.



In case of doubt about type of issuance, apply the following guidelines:

If the decision has been narrowed down to “serial vs. integrating resource” and there is no information about the type of issuance but the resource has wording that refers to “edition,” determine if that wording represents a numeric designation or an edition statement. If it is a numeric designation, catalog the resource as a serial; if it is an edition statement, catalog it as an integrating resource.

If the decision has been narrowed down to “monograph vs. integrating resource” and there is no information about the type of issuance, catalog the resource as an integrating resource if there is a likelihood the resource will be updated (i.e., assume the updates will not be discrete); catalog as a monograph if there is no indication that the resource will ever be updated.

Monograph vs. Serial

This section represents *LC/PCC practice*.

If the bibliographic resource to be cataloged and/or other bibliographic records in the database indicate that the resource has been or will be published in more than one part that will remain discrete or be published more than once, *consider the combination of characteristics below*

1.0

in deciding whether to catalog the resource as a single-part/multipart monograph or as a serial. Note the exception for publications of limited-duration activities at the end of this section.

1) *Frequency of publication*

a) If the resource has a stated frequency of publication (in the title proper, in the preface, etc.), catalog as a serial.

b) If the resource is published in new editions, catalog as a serial if the frequency of the editions is one to two years; give greater consideration to continuing to catalog as monographs if the editions are published three or more years apart.

2) *Presence and type of numbering.* Although the presence of numbering is no longer part of the definition of a serial, most serials except for unnumbered monographic series will have numeric, alphabetic, and/or chronological designations.

a) If the resource has a numeric/alphabetic (e.g., volume 1; tome 3; Heft A) or chronological designation (e.g., 2001; June 2002; 2002-1) in the title proper or elsewhere in the resource and it is likely that the resource doesn't have a predetermined conclusion, catalog as a serial.

b) If the resource has acquired a numeric, alphabetic, or chronological designation after the first issue, recatalog as a serial.

c) If the resource is published in frequent editions (see 1)b) above), it must have a designation (e.g., date, numeric edition statement) that could be used as numbering in order to be cataloged as a serial.

3) *Likelihood of no predetermined conclusion.* If the resource indicates that there is no predetermined conclusion, catalog as a serial. If the resource doesn't have such information, assume that a resource that has either of the following characteristics is a serial if it also meets the criteria given above for frequency and numbering.

a) Title proper implies continuing publication. If the title proper includes words that imply continuing publication (e.g., "Advances in ...;" "Developments in ...;" "Progress in ..."), catalog as a serial. If the issues also have analyzable titles, analyze the issues.

b) A subscription can be placed for the resource.

Publications of limited-duration activities: Also use the serial rules in chapter 12 for the cataloging of certain resources related to limited-duration activities provided that these resources have some characteristics of serials: successive issues, numbering, and perhaps frequency. Examples include a daily bulletin issued during a non-recurring meeting, a quarterly activities report of a project, and an annual report of an expedition. Do not recatalog records for such resources created before Dec. 1, 2002.

Situations Requiring Further Consideration

This section represents *LC/PCC practice*.

1) *Electronic resources*. If the resource was/is published in print, make the decision to catalog the electronic resource as a serial, integrating resource, or monograph based on the electronic resource itself, not on how it was issued in print. Information about the planned type of issuance may be given in the resource's "read me" files, etc.

a) Catalog as serial:

i) Remote access resource: a resource having material added as discrete, usually numbered issues (an "issue" can consist of a single article). The resource might contain a listing of back volumes, back issues, images of journal covers for sequential issues; only current issue may be available as a separate issue

ii) Direct access resource: a resource whose carrier is issued successively (this situation is analogous to a print serial whose latest volume supersedes any earlier volumes).

Note that such resources can be mounted on networks such that the successive issuance of the carrier is not observable to the cataloger or end user; when contributing cataloging in a shared environment (e.g., bibliographic utility), the record should reflect the carrier and type of issuance as published.

b) Catalog as an integrating resource:

i) Remote access resource: a resource having material added, changed, or deleted via updates that do not remain discrete (e.g., might contain articles from more than one journal).

ii) Direct access resource: no direct access resource can be issued as an integrating resource (assumption that would be changed if proven incorrect).

c) Catalog as a monograph: Remote or direct access resource: a resource complete in one part or intended to be complete in a finite number of parts, including those resources that are corrected via "errata" information.

2) *Resources issued in loose-leaf format*. When deciding to catalog a bibliographic resource issued in loose-leaf format as a serial, an integrating resource, or a monograph, make the decision based on the type of issuance of the primary component. If there is a stated frequency, determine if the frequency applies to the primary component or to any updates.

Note that a bibliographic resource issued in loose-leaf format is not automatically to be cataloged as an updating loose-leaf.

a) Catalog as a serial:

1.0

i) Resource otherwise meeting definition of serial whose issues remain discrete even though they are to be stored in a binder (as successive sections in the binder or subdivided/filed into separate sections in the binder)

ii) Resource whose binders are issued successively even though the contents filed into each binder may be updated in integrating fashion until the next binder is issued

b) Catalog as an integrating resource: Resource consisting of a binder or binders in which pages are added, removed, or replaced until the next edition of the resource is published or until complete

c) Catalog as a monograph: Resource complete as issued or intended to be complete in a finite number of parts

3) *Conference publications.* Conference publications typically consist of the minutes, proceedings, etc., of a regularly-held meeting of one or more corporate bodies or are publications that contain the proceedings, etc., of ongoing topical conferences, symposia, or colloquia.

a) Catalog as serials ongoing conference publications that are being cataloged for the first time, unless they are covered by the exclusions in paragraph b) below. Consider a conference publication to be “ongoing” if words such as “first” or “annual” appear in conjunction with the name of the conference or the title of the publication or if multiple successive issues show that the publication is continuing in nature.

b) Catalog as monographs those conference publications that are not ongoing or that:

i) have a title² unique to each issue appearing on the chief source, and/or

ii) are issued as part of a numbered monographic series.

Once the decision to catalog as a monograph or as a serial is determined based on the first—or earliest held—issue of a conference publication, prefer to retain that decision. When there is a change in the main entry for a conference publication cataloged as a serial, consider the publication to be “new” and decide whether to catalog it as a monograph or as a serial according to the above criteria.

When CONSER serial records exist for conferences represented by LC monograph records, LC serial catalogers will use “xlc” in the 042 field but *will not* de-authenticate the records.

4) *Supplements.* If the supplement can be used independently from the main resource, create a separate bibliographic record for it based on its type of issuance. For other situations, give a note

²Such unique titles are usually dedicated to a particular topic and vary from issue to issue and conference to conference. Use judgment when determining if thematic or slogan-like phrases constitute unique titles and, therefore, warrant monographic treatment.

about the material on the record for the main resource.

525 ## \$a Kept up-to-date by supplements.

Do not catalog a dependent supplement as a serial just because it has a stated frequency (e.g., an annual supplement to a monograph).

5) *Republications*

a) Republication of a serial: Generally, catalog a republication of a serial as a serial. However, catalog the following as a monograph:

A republication of a single issue or a limited number of issues

A collection of bibliographically unrelated serials or articles.

b) Republication of a monograph: Catalog as a monograph.

c) Republication of an integrating resource: Catalog as a monograph or as an integrating resource based on the type of issuance of the republication.

6) *Printed travel guides. LC practice as of 2001:* When deciding whether to catalog a printed travel guide as a serial or as a monograph and there is no information about the likelihood that it will be continued indefinitely, apply the following guidelines:

a) Generally, catalog a travel guide as a serial if it is general in scope because such guides usually are continued indefinitely. “General in scope” means the guide contains a variety of current information, e.g., about where to go, where to stay, and what to do. Apply this policy to state, region, or country guides for the United States, to region or country guides for other countries, and to guides for major cities. If a numeric or chronological designation is not available, supply a chronological designation based on the publishing or copyright date (cf. LCRI 12.3C1).

b) In case of doubt, catalog as a monograph.

7) *LC practice: Certain other printed resources*

After determining that the printed bibliographic resource

— is published in successive parts, and

— there is no information that the resource will be complete in a finite number of parts, and

— it isn't one of the resources noted in 1)-6) above, generally follow the decision to catalog as a monograph or as a serial for the specific categories in the two lists below. If the printed resource isn't represented by one of the categories below, catalog as a serial.

a) Catalog as monographs:

books “issued in parts” (fascicles)
cartographic materials
censuses
encyclopedias
hearings
publications of five-year plans

b) Catalog as serials:

alumni directories
college catalogs
court reports
sales/auction catalogs
session laws

Edition or Copy of Monograph

This section represents *LC/PCC practice*.

When a new manifestation of an item reaches the cataloger, the question arises as to whether this is a copy of an earlier manifestation or an edition separate from the earlier manifestation needing its own bibliographic record. Consult the definition of “Edition” in Appendix D. If, according to this definition, two items are known to be two different editions, create separate records for each.

Also, consider that a new edition is involved whenever

1) there is an explicit indication of changes (including corrections) of content; or,

2) anything in the following areas or elements of areas differs from one bibliographic record to another: title and statement of responsibility area, edition area, the extent statement of the physical description area, and series area. (*Note:* For printed music and sound recordings, consider that different editions exist whenever two items have different publisher's numbers or plate numbers).
*
* (For an exception relating to CIP items, see below.)

Whenever the question relates to the publication, distribution, etc., area or to ISBNs, consider that the item is a copy if the only variation is one or more of the following:

1) a difference in the printing or copyright date when there is also a publication date;

2) a minor variation in an entity's name. There are relatively few examples of this phenomenon, which arises when a publisher uses multiple forms concurrently. For example, “Duckworth” and “G. Duckworth” and “St. Martin's” and “St. Martin's Press” have been used at the same time by these publishers. A genuine name change, even if minor, should not be considered a variation;

-
- 3) the addition, deletion, or change of an ISBN;
 - 4) a difference in binding; or,
 - 5) a difference in the edition statement or the series whenever the item is a CIP book issued by the publisher in both a hardbound and a softbound version.

For variations in the publication, distribution, etc., area not covered by the preceding statements, consider that the item is a new edition. Noteworthy examples for the publication, distribution, etc., area are variations involving different places or entities transcribed or any difference in an entity's name that is suggestive of a sequence of names used, with one used for some time and another at some point replacing the first. For example, "Harper & Brothers" becomes "Harper & Row," "Doubleday, Doran" becomes "Doubleday."

N.B. Rare books in general follow the same policy, with exceptions as necessary.

Change in Cataloging Decision: Monograph/Serial

This section represents *LC/PCC practice*.

At some point after one or more monograph bibliographic records has/have been created and another resource with the same choice of main entry and form of title proper is received for cataloging, determine if the resource should be cataloged as a serial to save the time of continuing to prepare separate monograph records. If the resource is a conference publication, see paragraph 3) in the section "Situations Requiring Further Consideration" above. Otherwise, consider the following aspects when making the decision to recatalog as a serial:

- 1) the resource should have a designation (e.g., date, numeric edition statement) that could be used as numbering;
- 2) the frequency of the editions is one to two years (give greater consideration to continuing to catalog as monographs if the editions are published three or more years apart).

LC practice: LC no longer routinely cancels fully cataloged monograph records. Notes are added to the serial and monograph records to assist users and staff to locate all holdings for the title in the library. The serial bibliographic record continues to describe the entire serial.

Note added to monograph record:

500 ## \$a Issues for 1996- cataloged as a serial in LC.
\$5 DLC

Note added to serial record:

500 ## \$a Earlier issues, 1993-1995, cataloged as
monographs in LC. \$5 DLC

1.0C. PUNCTUATION/SPACING.

Table of Contents

Introduction

- 1) *General*
- 2) *Manual mode*
- 3) *Computerized mode*
- 4) *Application*

Access Points in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records (General)

- 1) *Punctuation/spacing within headings*
 - a) *Spaces following periods*
 - b) *Punctuation preceding the name of a language in uniform titles (240)*
 - c) *Ampersand*
 - d) *Parenthesis*
 - e) *Quotation mark*
 - f) *Open date*
- 2) *Ending mark of punctuation*
 - a) *Name authority records*
 - b) *Bibliographic records*

Personal Name Heading Access Points in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records

- 1) *Initials/letters*
 - a) *Name portion of heading*
 - Periods*
 - Spaces*
 - b) *"Additions" to name headings*
 - Periods*
 - Spaces*
- 2) *Names with portions abbreviated or missing*
- 3) *Surnames alone including prefixes/particles*
- 4) *Bibliographic description*

1.0C

Corporate Name Heading Access Points, Including Meetings, in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records

- 1) *Quotation marks*
- 2) *Initials*
- 3) *Abbreviations*
- 4) *Place name at end*
- 5) *Numerical or alphabetical designation*
- 6) *Dash or hyphen*
- 7) *Year in conference name*
- 8) *Series of words*

Bibliographic Linking Entries

Other Parts of the Bibliographic Record (General)

- 1) *Elements that are not initials, etc.*
- 2) *Initials, etc.*
- 3) *Year in the name of a conference*
- 4) *Dash in a title*
- 5) *Variant title*

Punctuation in Titles Proper that is also ISBD Punctuation

Punctuation at the End of Fields 245, 250, 260, 300, 310/321, 362

- 1) *Fields 245, 250*
- 2) *Field 260*
- 3) *Field 300*
- 4) *Fields 310/321*
- 5) *Field 362*

Punctuation in Notes

- 1) *Additional information expected*
- 2) *Ending mark of punctuation (5XX)*

LC/CONSER Practice for Temporary/Uncertain Data

- 1) *General*
- 2) *Detailed guidelines for recording temporary/uncertain data*
 - a) *Changes in title data (246/247)*
 - b) *Publication, distribution, etc. area (260)*

Permanent date
Temporary date
Non-Christian era date

-
- c) Physical description area (300)

*General
Bibliographic record*

- d) Frequency information (310/321)
e) Series area: open entry multipart items in series (4XX)
f) Series area: only some issues of a serial or parts of a multipart item in a series (4XX)
g) Notes area (5XX)
h) Bibliographic linking entry notes (76X-78X)
-

Introduction

1) *General.* This is an overall statement related to punctuation/spacing conventions. For convenience, it addresses in one place conventions applicable to access points in bibliographic and name authority records and those applicable to other parts of the bibliographic record. Also as a matter of convenience, statements on punctuation/spacing are being retained at their relevant location throughout the LCRIS. As appropriate, there are references to these other LCRIS; in the other LCRIS there are references to this LCRI.

2) *Manual mode.* In the card catalog environment there were spacing and punctuation conventions appropriate to that environment. Blank spaces were used when it was thought data would be written in, for example following an open date. In general, two spaces were used between data elements in the “body of the entry” and to separate the units of headings. Double punctuation was to be avoided.

3) *Computerized mode.* The computerized environment calls for a different set of conventions. Much of the data in a MARC record are explicitly identified by content designation (tags, indicators, subfield codes). Upon output or display, the content designation is used to determine various display conventions including spacing. Internally there is often no spacing at all but instead content designation, particularly subfield codes. In displays that do not show content designation, spacing is substituted. How much spacing is at the discretion of a particular system. In the displays illustrated in this LCRI, one space is substituted for a subfield code. However, for data that are not subfielded (e.g, the constituent elements of a corporate name serving as a qualifier, the unsubfielded units in a linking entry field (hereafter “linking entry”), unsubfielded statements or data in the title and statement of responsibility area), it is necessary to establish the spacing to be input. The computerized environment is oriented to a single-space convention throughout authority and bibliographic records.

Note that some systems display a space on either side of a subfield code to aid the comprehension of subfielded data. Such “spaces” are also a function of display, i.e., they are not carried internally. In the examples in this LCRI, no spaces are used on either side of a subfield code to insure that there is no confusion about the spacing convention being illustrated.

110 1# \$aCalifornia.\$bDept. of Water Resources.

<i>display:</i>	California. Dept. of Water Resources.
<i>display:</i>	130 #0 \$aBulletin (California. Dept. of Water Resources) Bulletin (California. Dept. of Water Resources)
<i>display:</i>	490 1# \$aBiblioteca de arte hispánico ;\$v8.\$aArtes aplicadas ;\$v1 Biblioteca de arte hispánico ; 8. Artes aplicadas ; 1
<i>display:</i>	700 1# \$aEliot, T. S.\$q(Thomas Stearns),\$d1888- 1965.\$tCocktail party. Eliot, T. S. (Thomas Stearns), 1888-1965. Cocktail party.
<i>display:</i>	780 00 \$aLibrary of Congress. Division for the Blind and Physically Handicapped.\$tNews Library of Congress. Division for the Blind and Physically Handicapped. News
<i>display:</i>	785 00 \$tJournal of polymer science. Part A, General papers Journal of polymer science. Part A, General papers

The examples show a display form meant only to illustrate suppression of subfields on display. How data are actually displayed is at the discretion of individual systems and agencies.

4) *Application.* To the extent that a particular system allows, apply the conventions stated in this and other LCRIS in lieu of any other explicit or implicit instructions in the rules (e.g., 1.IG3 * regarding spacing following a period for certain cases of items without a collective title). Any * instructions in this LCRI related to series access points are applicable only to PCC participants.

Access Points in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records (General)

Follow these general conventions applicable to MARC 21 fields 1XX, 4XX, 5XX in authority records and fields 1XX, 240, 246/247, 4XX, 6XX, 70X-75X, and 8XX in bibliographic records. For bibliographic linking entries (MARC 21 fields 76X-78X) see the section: **Bibliographic Linking Entries.**

1) *Punctuation/spacing within headings.* Use internal punctuation to set off unambiguously the units of headings or reference tracings (including name/title portions of name/title fields). The marks of punctuation for this purpose are a period (.), a comma (,), a quotation mark ("), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), and a hyphen (-).

a) *Spaces following periods.* Leave one space after a period or other mark of ending punctuation (see 1) immediately above) that serves to separate units of access points. If the period or other mark of ending punctuation is followed by a subfield code, the space can be generated on display. If no subfield code follows, e.g., as in units of parenthetical qualifiers, input the space. See the examples above in the **Introduction.**

b) Punctuation preceding the name of a language in uniform titles (240). Interpret the last sentence of rule 25.C1 as reading “Precede the language by a full stop unless the uniform title ends with an exclamation mark or a question mark.

240 10 \$aBohème.\$pSono andati?\$lEnglish

but

240 10 \$aOpération “Vicaire.”\$lGerman

*

Apply a similar approach to music uniform titles created in accord with rules 25.35B-25.35F.

240 10 \$aHello Dolly!\$sLibretto

*

but

240 10 \$aBoris Godunov (1872).\$sLibretto.\$l English
& Russian

240 10 \$aWas noch lebt--.\$s Vocal score

c) Ampersand. Input one space on either side of an ampersand or an ampersand equivalent used in a heading.

130 #0 \$aR & D report (University of Texas at Austin.
Research and Development Center for Teacher
Education)
(Heading on name authority record)

130 0# \$aAmerica’s favorite inns, B & Bs & small hotels.
\$pMiddle Atlantic.
(Heading on bibliographic record)

d) Parenthesis. If a unit of a heading or reference tracing other than the last ends in a closing parenthesis, input after the closing parenthesis the same punctuation, usually a period, that would be used if there were no parenthesis.

110 1# \$aNew York (State).\$bGovernor (1929-1932 :
Roosevelt)
(Heading on either a bibliographic or name authority record)

110 2# \$aCatholic Church.\$bPope (1978- : John Paul
II).\$tRedemptor hominis.\$lEnglish
(Heading on a name authority record)

400 1# \$aSmith, A. G.\$q(Albert Gray), \$d1945-\$tDiscovering
Canada
(Reference on a name authority record)

1.0C

e) *Quotation mark.* Use American-style double quotation marks instead of other forms of quotation marks. If a unit of a heading or reference tracing other than the last ends in a quotation mark, input a period or other mark of ending punctuation inside the quotation mark.

110 2# \$aCasa de la Cultura Ecuatoriana "Benjamín
Carrión."\$bNúcleo de Bolívar
(Heading on a name authority record)

111 2# \$aSimposio "Antropólogos y Misioneros: Posiciones
Incompatibles?"\$d(1985 :\$cBogotá, Colombia)
(Heading on either a bibliographic or name authority record)

130 #0 \$aCollection "Bibliothèque des matières
premières."\$pSérie "Energie"
(Heading on a name authority record)

710 2# \$aName with "quote (qualifier and question
mark)?"\$tTitle.
(Heading on a bibliographic record)

f) *Open date.* Leave one space between an open date and any data that follow it within the same subfield.

110 1# \$aVirginia.\$bGovernor (2002- : Warner)
(Heading on either a bibliographic or name authority record)

When a subfield code immediately follows an open date do *not* leave a space

600 10 \$aCapote, Truman,\$d 1924-\$tBreakfast at Tiffany's.
(Open date followed by a subfield code)

2) *Ending mark of punctuation.* For heading access points, an ending mark of punctuation is a period (.), closing parenthesis ()), closing bracket (]), quotation mark ("), question mark (?), exclamation mark (!), hyphen (- ; usually used at the end of an open date).

a) *Name authority records.* Do not end headings or reference tracings with an ending mark of punctuation except when it is part of the data (e.g., a period in an abbreviation) or is called for by the cataloging rules (e.g., a parenthetical qualifier).

100 1# \$aSmith, John

100 1# \$aSmith, John A.

100 1# \$aSmith, J. A.\$q(John A.)

100 1# \$aSmith, John,\$db. 1648?

```

100 1# $aSmith, John,$d1924-
110 2# $aLibrary of Congress
110 1# $aNew York (State).$bGovernor (1929-1932 :
      Roosevelt)
110 2# $aMoskovskii fotoklub "Novator"
130 #0 $aCollection "Bibliothèque des matières
      premières."$pSérie "Energie"

```

b) *Bibliographic records*. Except for a uniform title (field 240), a variant title (field 246), a former title (field 247), and 4XX series fields, end access points with either a period or other ending mark of punctuation. End a 240 uniform title, 246 variant title, 247 former title, and 4XX series with an ending mark of punctuation only when such a mark of punctuation is part of the data. Note that these guidelines relate to punctuation at the end of the data constituting an access point itself. Under certain circumstances, a field may actually end with MARC 21 subfield \$4 (Relator code) or \$5 (Institution to which field applies), in which case there is no punctuation at the end of the field.

```

100 1# $aSmith, John.
100 1# $aSmith, John A.
100 1# $aSmith, John,$db. 1648?
100 1# $aSmith, John,$d1924-
110 2# $aLibrary of Congress.
110 1# $aNew York (State).$bGovernor (1929-1932 :
      Roosevelt)
700 1# $aBrett, Jan,$d1949-$e ill.
700 1# $aDemus, Jorg,$d1928-$4prf
710 2# $aBeecham Choral Society.$4prf
710 2# $aRaymond Foye Editions,$edonor.$5DLC

```

Note that, as the last example shows, when a heading ends in a designation of function, it may also be followed by subfield \$4 or \$5 and the field itself does not end with punctuation.

When a heading ends in a quotation mark, place any mark of final punctuation that is also part of the data inside the quotation mark. Otherwise, place a period inside the mark of punctuation.

```

710 2# $aName with "quote (qualifier and question mark)?"

```

710 2# \$aMoskovskiĭ gorodskoĭ klub "Kontakty-1."

830 #0 \$aCollection "Bibliothèque des matières
premières."\$pSérie "Energie."

Personal Name Heading Access Points in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records

These guidelines appear also in LCRI 22.1B.

1) *Initials/letters*

a) *Name portion of heading*

Periods. If the name of a person consists of or contains initials, input a period after an initial if it is certain that the letter is an initial. In case of doubt, do not input a period.

100 1# \$aEliot, T. S.
100 0# \$aH. D.

If the name consists of separate letters that are presumed not to be initials, omit or include periods according to the predominant usage of the person.

100 0# \$aX Y Z

Spaces. If the name contains two or more forenames represented by initials, consists entirely of initials, or consists entirely of separate letters that are not initials, input a single space between the initials/letters in all cases.

100 1# \$aEliot, T. S.
100 0# \$aH. D.
100 0# \$aX Y Z

b) *"Additions" to name headings*

Periods. With initials, include periods unless the author's predominant usage makes it clear that the author omits them.

Spaces. Do not leave spaces between single initials/letters.

100 1# \$aBrown, G. B., \$cF.I.P.S.

Treat an abbreviation consisting of more than a single letter as if it were a distinct word, separating it with a space from preceding and succeeding words or initials/letters.

100 1# \$aBrown, G. B., \$cPh. D.

2) *Names with portions abbreviated or missing.* If a part of a name is abbreviated (two or more letters present as opposed to a single letter used as an initial) or if a forename is missing from

a name entered under surname, do not leave open space after the abbreviation or missing forename. Instead, insert, as appropriate,

a period:

```
100 1# $aTissot
      (Add period at end in bibliographic record, but not in authority
      record)
100 1# $aCorpeleijn, W. F. Th.
100 1# $aJunager, Sv.-Aa.
      (The hyphen reflects the usage of the language of the name)
```

a period and one space:

```
100 1# $aEnschedé, Ch. J.
```

a period and a comma:

```
100 1# $aJones, Th., $d1910-
100 1# $aCalles Ll., Alfonso
100 1# $aDahlan Aman, Mohd., $cHaji
      (For these names, add period at end in bibliographic record, but
      not in authority record)
```

3) *Surnames alone including prefixes/particles.* If a name heading consisting entirely of one or more surnames also contains a separately written prefix/particle, see instructions in LCRI 22.5D.

4) *Bibliographic description.* Note that the spacing and punctuation conventions applied to personal names used in access points differ from those used in the descriptive portion of a bibliographic record; for the latter, see the section below: **Other Parts of the Bibliographic Record (General)**.

Corporate Name Heading Access Points, Including Meetings, in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records

These guidelines appear also in LCRI 24.1.

1) *Quotation marks.* If the form of name selected as the heading includes quotation marks around an element or elements of the name, retain them (*cf.* example in rule 24.7B4). Use American-style double quotation marks in the heading instead of other forms of quotation marks.

2) *Initials.* If the form of name selected as the heading consists of or contains initials, regularize the spacing and put one space after an initial that is followed by a word or other element that is not an initial and no space after an initial that is followed by another initial consisting of one letter.

source: F&H Denby
heading: 110 2# \$aF & H Denby

1.0C

source: U. S. D. A. Symposium ...
heading: 111 2# \$aU.S.D.A. Symposium ...

source: B B C Symphony ...
heading: 110 2# \$aBBC Symphony ...

3) *Abbreviations.* Precede or follow abbreviations consisting of two or more letters with a space, e.g., "Gauley Bridge (W. Va.)," "Ph. D. Associates."

4) *Place name at end.* If the form of name selected as the heading includes a place name at the end and the place is enclosed within parentheses or is preceded by a comma-space, retain in the heading the punctuation as found.

110 2# \$aCalifornia State University, Northridge

5) *Numerical or alphabetical designation.* When the name of a body consists of both a numerical or alphabetical designation and words indicating the body's function, include both in the heading for the body. Separate the two parts with a dash (two hyphens).

source: Abteilung V - Vermessungswesen
heading: 110 2# \$a[Parent body].\$bAbteilung V--Vermessungswesen

source: Social and Economic Sciences (Section K)
heading: 110 2# \$a[Parent body].\$bSocial and Economic
Sciences--Section K

source: Sub-task Force I, Gas Dissolved in Water
heading: 110 2# \$a[Parent body].\$bSub-task Force I--Gas
Dissolved in Water

6) *Dash or hyphen.* If the form of name selected as the heading includes a dash or a hyphen that sets off a data element (usually a place name), regularize the punctuation by using a dash (two hyphens) without spacing on either side.

source: University of Nebraska—Lincoln
heading: 110 2# \$aUniversity of Nebraska--Lincoln

source: Centro abruzzese di ricerche storiche - Teramo
heading: 110 2# \$aCentro abruzzese di ricerche storiche--Teramo

7) *Year in conference name.* If the form of name of a conference selected as the heading contains an abbreviated or full form of a year, regularize the spacing by insuring that one space precedes the year regardless of the configuration of the year (e.g., use of an apostrophe or other character as a substitute for a portion of the year; the full form of a year combined with another element without spacing).

source: CDS2000

heading: 111 2# \$aCDS 2000 ...

source: CP 2000

heading: 111 2# \$aCP 2000 ...

source: CP98

heading: 111 2# CP 98 ...

source: ECOOP'99 SCM-9 Symposium

heading: 111 2# \$aECOOP '99 SCM-9 Symposium ...

8) *Series of words.* Add a comma to a series of words appearing in an English-language name except before an ampersand. *Exceptions:*

a) For British headings, follow the punctuation in the publication, which normally will not include a comma before the conjunction in the series of words, e.g.,

110 1# \$aGreat Britain.\$bMinistry of Agriculture,
Fisheries and Food

not 110 1# \$aGreat Britain.\$bMinistry of Agriculture,
Fisheries, and Food

b) For Canadian headings, follow the punctuation provided by the National Library of Canada.

Note: Headings originally established before January 1981 that are in accord with current policy except for punctuating words in series were coded "AACR2" before September 1982. Continue to use the existing form of the established heading in post-August 1982 cataloging. (Headings other than those from the National Library of Canada or British or Irish headings coded after August 1982 will be in accord with AACR2 and current LC policy.)

Bibliographic Linking Entries

For linking entries (MARC 21 fields 76X-78X), in general follow the conventions in the sections above with respect to punctuation/spacing. Note, however, unlike name authority headings and references, the individual components of names in subfields \$a (Main entry heading), \$s (Uniform title), and \$t (Title) are not subfielded.

Subfields \$a and \$s end with a period or other mark of ending punctuation. Subfield \$t does not end in a mark of ending punctuation except when such a mark is part of the data. When subfield \$b (Edition) follows subfield \$t, subfield \$t ends in a period or other mark of ending punctuation. *Exception:* The National Library of Canada inputs a period at the end of subfield \$t. LC/CONSER and PCC practice is to retain the period when using these records.

Subfields \$x (ISSN) and \$g (Relationship information) are not preceded by a comma.

LC practice: In subfield \$w (Record control number) LC does not, for system reasons, supply the blank (space) at the end of a two-digit year LCCN called for by MARC 21.

1.0C

Other Parts of the Bibliographic Record (General)

1) *Elements that are not initials, etc.* Leave only one space after a period. If a personal name consists of separate letters, record the letters without internal spaces, regardless of how they are presented in the source of information.

chief source: X Y Z
(*Letters representing a personal name*)

transcription: XYZ

2) *Initials, etc.* Record initials, initialisms, and acronyms without internal spaces, regardless of how they are presented in the source of information. Apply this provision also whether these elements are presented with or without periods.

Pel batesimo di S.A.R. Ludovico ...
KL Ianuarius habet dies xxxi
Monasterij B.M.V. campililioru[m]
J.J. Rousseau
\$aNew York :\$bW.W. Morrow,\$c1980.

In some cases personal name initials may be presented in a source without periods. When they are known to be initials, regularize the punctuation by inserting a period after each letter. In case of doubt, do not insert periods.

chief source: by T S Eliot
transcription: by T.S. Eliot

but *chief source:* Dr. X goes to the movies
transcription: Dr. X goes to the movies

Input one space after an initial that is followed by a word or other element that is not an initial and no space after an initial that is followed by another initial consisting of one letter.

source: F&H Denby
transcription: F & H Denby ...

source: AT&T Bell Laboratories technical journal
transcription: AT & T Bell Laboratories technical journal ...

source: R&D report
transcription: R & D report ...

source: U. S. D. A. Symposium ...
transcription: U.S.D.A. Symposium ...

source: B B C Symphony ...
transcription: BBC Symphony ...

Treat an abbreviation consisting of more than a single letter as if it were a distinct word, separating it with a space from preceding and succeeding words or initials.

Ph. D.
 Ad bibliothecam PP. Franciscan. in Anger
 Mr. J.P. Morgan
 Paratium camukamum /\$cMa. Pa. Periyacamit Turan
 \$aCharleston, W. Va. :\$b[s.n.],\$c1980.
 ... by Wm. A. Brown

If two or more distinct initialisms (or set of initials), acronyms, or abbreviations appear in juxtaposition, separate each from the other with a space.

M. J.P. Rabaut
(i.e., Monsieur J.P. Rabaut)
 par R.F. s. d. C. Paris ...
(i.e., par Roland Fréart, sieur de Chambray ...)

3) *Year in the name of a conference.* When transcribing the name of a conference that contains an abbreviated or full form of a year, regularize the spacing by insuring that one space precedes the year regardless of the configuration of the year (e.g., use of an apostrophe or other character as a substitute for a portion of the year; the full form of a year combined with another element without spacing).

source: CDS2000
transcription: CDS 2000

source: CP 2000
transcription: CP 2000

source: CP98
transcription: CP 98

source: ... ECOOP'98 workshop reader ...
transcription: ... ECOOP '98 workshop reader ...

source: ECOOP'99 SCM-9 Symposium
transcription: ECOOP '99 SCM-9 Symposium

4) *Dash in a title.* When transcribing a title that contains a dash and it is to be retained because the data element(s) following the dash are part of the title proper, transcribe the dash as two adjacent hyphens, with no space on either side of the hyphens.

source: Bridge reinspection report[dash]phase I ...
transcription: Bridge reinspection report--phase I ...

1.0C

source: Byrd family in Indiana[dash]1880-1990
transcription: Byrd family in Indiana--1880-1990

5) *Variant title.* Do not end a variant title (field 246) with a mark of ending punctuation except when it is part of the data (e.g., a period in an abbreviation).

Punctuation in Titles Proper that is also ISBD Punctuation

For the very particular treatment of punctuation occurring in titles proper that is also ISBD punctuation, see LCRI 1.1B1.

Punctuation at the End of Fields 245, 250, 260, 300, 310/321, 362

As rule 1.0C indicates, the ISBD punctuation between areas (period-space-dash-space) is omitted only when the next area is paragraphed. By long-standing practice, fields 245, 250, and 260 constitute a paragraph as do fields 300-4XX. That same long-standing practice treats MARC 21 5XX as individual paragraphs. Thus, the period-space-dash-space would not be used to separate the physical description area from the publication, distribution, etc., area or to separate the first note of the note area from the physical description or the series areas.

1) *Fields 245, 250.* If either field 245 or 250 does not end in a period, add one. Such a period is needed to generate the period-space-dash-space separator in a potential paragraphed display. In the following examples of paragraphed displays, the period of the period-space-dash-space separator is in the record but the “space-dash-space” is not; it is generated by the display software.

display: 245 00 \$aWhy me?
260 ## \$aBirmingham, Ala. :\$bWesting Co.,\$c1982.
Why me?. -- Birmingham, Ala. : Westing Co., 1982.

display: 245 00 \$aWestlake's A study of "Singin' in the rain".
260 ## \$aBridgeport, Utah :\$b[s.n.],\$c1983.
Westlake's A study of "Singin' in the rain". --
Bridgeport, Utah : [s.n.], 1983.

display: 250 ## \$a[1st ed.].
260 ## \$aChicago, Ill. :\$bPogner Corp.,\$c1984-
. -- [1st ed.]. -- Chicago, Ill. : Pogner Corp., 1984-

2) *Field 260.* Field 260 ends with a period, a closing parenthesis, a closing bracket, a question mark, or a hyphen). *Exceptionally*, when no date is present in a serial or integrating resource description, the field does not end in a mark of ending punctuation unless it is part of the name of the publisher (i.e., in the absence of a date, no punctuation is added). Since it is *LC practice* for monographs to enclose temporary data within angle brackets (see **LC/CONSER Practice for Temporary/Uncertain Data** below), this field may also end in an angle bracket.

3) *Field 300.* Field 300 ends in a period or a closing parenthesis. When field 300 is followed by a 4XX field, insure that it ends in a period. In the following examples, the parentheses surrounding the series statements are not in the record; instead, they are generated by the display

software.

```
300 ## $a271 p. ;$c21 cm. +$e1 atlas (37 p., 19 leaves
      ; 37 cm.).
490 1# $aResearch series
display: 271 p. ; 21 cm. + 1 atlas (37 p., 19 leaves ; 37 cm.).
        -- (Research series)
```

```
300 ## $a96 p. :$bill. ;$c18 cm.
440 #0 $aR & D publications
display: 96 p. : ill. ; 18 cm. -- (R & D publications)
```

4) *Fields 310/321*. These fields do not end in a period unless it is part of the data. They can end in a hyphen (open date), a right parenthesis (qualifying information), or an angle bracket (LC/CONSER practice for temporary data).

5) *Field 362*. For the ending mark of punctuation, apply the convention stated below in 2) *Ending mark of punctuation (5XX)* in the section **Punctuation in Notes**.

Punctuation in Notes

1) *Additional information expected*. When additional information is expected, precede or follow a hyphen with one space.

```
246 1# $iIssues for Oct. 1975- have title:$aCrime &
      delinquency
500 ## $aVol. 9- edited by G. Svehla has title ...
500 ## $aVols. -10 translated by ...
500 ## $aVols. for -1979 also have additional section
      called ...
```

2) *Ending mark of punctuation (5XX)*. See also the section “g) *Notes area (5XX)*” below under **LC/CONSER Practice for Temporary/Uncertain Data**.

For 5XX notes, an ending mark of punctuation is a period (.), quotation mark (”), question mark (?), exclamation mark (!), hyphen (- ; used at the end of an open date, etc.), and (LC/CONSER practice) angle bracket (>). End each note with a period or other mark of ending punctuation.

```
504 ## $aIncludes bibliographical references (p. 310-
      325).
```

If a note ends in a quotation mark, input a period or other mark of ending punctuation inside the quotation mark.

1.0C

500 ## \$a "Circulated privately to her friends: not for sale."

Note that these guidelines relate to punctuation at the end of the data constituting a note itself. Under certain circumstances, a field may actually end with MARC 21 subfields as follows:

a) \$5 (Institution to which field applies), in which case there is no punctuation at the end of the field.

*

500 ## \$aLC set incomplete: v. 12 wanting.\$5DLC

b) \$u (Uniform Resource Identifier), in which case the last character in the field is whatever is the last character of the URI.

530 ## \$aElectronic version also available to purchase at:\$u <http://www.thelearner.com>

but 530 ## \$aAvailable online at the U.S. Census Bureau Web site (<http://www.census.gov>).

c) \$7 (Fixed-length data elements of reproduction) defined for used in field 533; when used, there is no punctuation at the end of the field.

533 ## \$aMicrofilm.\$m1962-1966.\$bAnn Arbor, Mich.
:\$cUniversity Microfilms
International,\$d1988.\$e1 microfilm reel ; 35
mm.\$7d19621965miuuua

EXCEPTIONS:

Incomplete 505 field, fields 510, 535, 536, 583, 586. These fields do not end in a period or other mark of ending punctuation unless it is part of the data, e.g., a period that is part of an abbreviation or a hyphen at the end of an open date, etc.

LC/CONSER Practice for Temporary/Uncertain Data

1) *General.* Indicate that data are temporary or uncertain by enclosing them within angle brackets (<>). Such data display in all cases. Treat angle brackets as regular characters, applying normal spacing conventions preceding and following them as illustrated in the examples.

When a date is enclosed within angle brackets, do not use spacing to show that it is an open one: "<1981->" When an open date occurs outside angle brackets, use normal spacing preceding or following a hyphen unless preceded or followed by a temporary date enclosed within angle brackets, e.g., "1979-<1980>" or "<1979>-1980."

When spans of beginning and/or ending dates or numbers include temporary data, give the hyphen within or outside the angle brackets as shown in the following examples:

<1966->
 <-no. 47>
 <May 2001-v. 3, no. 2>
 1998-<fall 2001>
 <Bd. 4>-Bd. 12

When holdings are enclosed within angle brackets, do not use spacing to show that they are temporary.

300 ## \$av. <1>
 505 1# \$a-- v. 2. La foto-restituzione grafico-numerica.
 pt. 1. Generalita (2 v.). pt. 2. Photographie
 oblique <v. 1>

2) Detailed guidelines for recording temporary/uncertain data.

a) Changes in title data (246/247).

246 1# \$iAdded title page title <release 5, published
 1999>:\$aMath education scholarships
(Updating loose-leaf)

246 1# \$iParallel title in HTML header <Jan. 13,
 2002>:\$aChildren and young persons
(Updating Web site)

246 14 \$aState publications monthly checklist\$f<July
 1976->
(Serial)

247 10 \$aMembership directory\$f<update 2, published 1999>
(Updating loose-leaf)

b) *Publication, distribution, etc. area (260)*. These conventions do not apply to serials or integrating resources (temporary data not recorded in this field).

Permanent date. If an entire date is judged to be permanent, record it without angle brackets.

, 1980-
 not <1980-> or , 1980-< >
 (v. <1>; v. 1 published in 1980)

Temporary date. If a portion of a date is temporary, enclose the portion in angle brackets.

, 1980-<1981>
 (v. <1-2>; v. 2. published in 1981)

, <1981->
(v. <2>; v. 1-2 published in 1981; LC has only v. 2)

, <1979>-1981.
(v. <2-3>; 3 v. set; LC does not have v. 1)

, <c1978-c1980>
(v. <2-3>; 5 v. set; LC does not have v. 1 or v. 5)

Non-Christian era date. When the expression of date includes one from the non-Christian era and that date is temporary (as when cataloging a multipart item from other than volume 1), consider the whole expression of date as temporary and give the whole in angle brackets, e.g., <Shōwa 57- [1982->

c) *Physical description area (300).* These conventions do not apply to serials or integrating resources (temporary data not recorded in this field).

General. Holdings are recorded in holdings and item records. In general, record holdings for incomplete (“open entry”) multipart items in the bibliographic record as well.

Bibliographic record. Record holdings in angle brackets following the specific material designation until the item is complete and the record is closed.

1) When a single piece of a multipart item is held, record only the piece/number designation.

v. <1> :
sheets <3> :
sound discs <2> :
film cassettes :
maps <4> :

2) When more than one piece of a multipart item is held, indicate the piece numbers/designations held inclusively, if they are consecutive, or individually if they are not consecutive.

v. <1-2> :
film cassettes <3, 5> :
microfilm reels <4, 6, 7-10> :
microscope slides <A-C, E> :
1 atlas (v. <1> ; maps (some col.) ; 43 cm.) + <1>
texts (30 cm.)

3) For multipart items in which the number of bibliographic units differs from the number of physical units (as originally issued in contrast to subsequent binding (cf. LCRI 2.5B18)), formulate an intelligible statement of the situation as follows:

a) Record the numbers/designations of the bibliographic units held

followed by a semicolon, the word “in” and the number of physical units; enclose the entire statement within angle brackets following the specific material designation.

v. <v. 1-2; in 3> :

b) In complicated situations it is necessary to judge the best formulation on a case-by-case basis. In general, when bibliographic units are themselves further divided into parts, etc., indicate this by using the numbers/designations applicable to each unit, separating this information by semicolons.

v. <v. 1, pt. 1; v. 2; in 3> :

The formulation given in the physical description area may depend upon whether a contents note is given, and if so, the information included there. For example, if all parts of a volume are held and are recorded in the notes area, it is not necessary to itemize them in the extent of item statement as well.

v. <v. 1, pts. A-B; v. 2, pts. A-B; v. 3, pts. A-B; v. 4, pts. A-B; v. 5-14; in 18> :

(No contents note given)

v. <v. 1; v. 2, pts. A-B; in 3> :

505 1# \$aNo. 1, pt. 1. Inorganic ligands / compiled by Lars Gunnar Sillén. Pt. 2. Organic including macromolecule ligands / compiled by Arthur E. Martell -- [No. 2.] Pt. A. Inorganic ligands / compiled by Erik Högfeltd. Pt. B. Organic ligands / compiled by Douglas D. Perrin (2 v.)

v. <v. 1, pt. 1; v. 2; in 3>

505 1# \$av. 1. Introduction <pt. 1> - v. 2. Guide (2 v.).

4) For multipart items in which the number of pieces is very large or the pieces have no individual numbering/designations, give in angle brackets the cumulative number of pieces held. If the set is incomplete, give the number *preceding* the specific material designation.

<50> playing cards
(Complete in 52 playing cards)

<179> sheets
(Complete in 200 sheets)

d) *Frequency information (310/321)*

310 ## \$aUpdated monthly,\$b<May 15, 2001>
321 ## \$aUpdated quarterly,\$b<Sept. 9, 1999>
(Updating loose-leaf)

```
310 ## $aUpdated daily,$b<Aug. 15, 2002>
321 ## $aFrequency varies,$b<Feb. 2, 1999>
      (Updating Web site)
```

```
310 ## $aQuarterly,$b<Nov. 1984-v. 16, no. 3>
321 ## $aSemimonthly,$b<Oct./Nov. 1971->
      (Serial)
```

e) *Series area: open entry multipart items in series (4XX)*. When a multipart item itself is in a series and the multipart item is classified as a collection, record the numbering of the series in the collected set record according to the following guidelines until the multipart item is complete.

1) Record the series numbering for the first or last volume as permanent data, i.e., not within angle brackets.

2) Record all the series numbering as permanent data when the first or last volume is in hand with other consecutive volumes of the multipart item and the series numbering is scattered.

3) In all other situations, record the series numbering as temporary data, i.e., within angle brackets.

Use a hyphen to separate consecutive numbers and a comma to separate scattered numbers. When the multipart item is complete, show all numbering as permanent data.

First or last volume of multipart item being cataloged

no other volumes

```
245 $aMultipart item title
300 $av. <1>
4XX $a_____; $vv. 13
      (v. 1 of multipart item is v. 13 of series)
```

```
245 $aMultipart item title
300 $av. <5>
4XX $a_____; $vno. 22
      (v. 5 of multipart item is no. 22 of series)
```

other volumes and series numbering consecutive

```
245 $aMultipart item title
300 $av. <1-2>
4XX $a_____; $vno. 3-<4>
      (v. 1-2 of multipart item are no. 3-4 of series)
```

*

other volumes and series numbering scattered

245 \$aMultipart item title
 300 \$av. <1-3>
 4XX \$a_____;\$vv. 5, 7, 10 *
 (v. 1-3 of multipart item are v. 5, 7, 10 of series)

245 \$aMultipart item title
 300 \$av. <1, 3>
 4XX \$a_____;\$vno. 24, <30> *
 (v. 1, 3 of multipart item are no. 24, 30 of series)

*Volumes other than first or last volume of multipart item being cataloged**only one volume in hand:*

245 \$aMultipart item title
 300 \$av. <2>
 4XX \$a_____;\$vno. <18> *
 (v. 2 of multipart item is no. 18 of series)

more than one volume in hand and series numbering consecutive

245 \$aMultipart item title
 300 \$av. <2-4>
 4XX \$a_____;\$vno. <9-11> *
 (v. 2-4 of multipart item are no. 9-11 of series)

more than one volume in hand and series numbering scattered

245 \$aMultipart item title
 300 \$av. <2, 4>
 4XX \$a_____;\$vno. <31, 42> *
 (v. 2, 4 of multipart item are no. 31, 42 of series)

Change from previous practice: PCC practice: Note that it is no longer necessary to create an 8XX added entry solely because the numbering is not consecutive or the first number is not permanent. It is not necessary to change existing records that reflect the old practice until the record is closed. If it is necessary to create an 8XX added entry for some other reason, give the numbering in the same manner as for 4XX fields. *

f) Series area: only some issues of a serial or parts of a multipart item in a series (4XX). If some issues of a serial or parts of a multipart item are in a series and others are not, precede the series title with an indication of the particular issues or parts to which the series applies. Separate the indication from the series title with a colon-space.

4XX \$a<1981->: Reference works *

1.0C

* 4XX \$a<1979>-May 1980: Department of State
publication ;\$v7894

* 4XX \$av. 1: Dance and dancers to-day ;\$v13

g) *Notes area (5XX).*

Dates. Record dates as provided in 1) *General* above.

500 ## Issued by: [body], 1888- ; by: [body], <1993->

Volume numbers. Record volume numbers as provided in 2) c) above.

500 ## \$aVols. <1.3, 2.1> edited by P.G. Durniok and
published by P. Hanstein, Cologne.

500 ## \$aVol. <2> has imprint ...

500 ## \$aVols. 1-6 prepared by H. Lepage; v. 7-<8> by E.
Duvernoy.

Do not use “empty” angle brackets; instead, insert one space after or before a hyphen if additional information is expected.

500 ## \$aVol. 9- edited by G. Svehla has title ...

500 ## \$aVols. -10 translated by ...

Contents notes. If volume one is not held, begin the field with two adjacent hyphens followed by a space and the number of the first volume actually held.

300 ## \$a<v. 2, pt. 1-2; in 3>
505 1# \$a-- v. 2. La foto-restituzione grafico-numerica.
pt. 1. Generalita (2 v.). pt. 2. Photographie
oblique <v. 1>

If the set is incomplete but volume one is held, put the space-dash-space before each title (other than for volume one) that is being recorded and leave four spaces for the missing volume(s).

When the number of bibliographic units differs from the number of physical units and the parts of each bibliographic unit are indicated in the contents note, record the numbers/designations of the parts that are incomplete in angle brackets. In general, include in the angle brackets any designation of the part, especially if this varies from the designation of the larger unit of which it is a part.

300 ## \$a<pt. 1; pt. 2, v. 1; in 3>
505 1# \$apt. 1. Historical study. v. 1, Text. v. 2,
Notes. -- pt. 2. Annexes: alphabetic repertory
of noble families <v. 1>

h) *Bibliographic linking entry notes (76X-78X)*. Record dates and/or numbers as provided in 1) *General* above in this section.

777 08 \$iVols. for 1997-<2000> issued with:\$tXYZ
newsletter

770 0# \$tDonneés statistiques pour la Haute
-Normandie\$g<1982->

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

1.0E. LANGUAGE AND SCRIPT OF THE DESCRIPTION.

When applicable, apply these guidelines, including the use of brackets, to headings.

Font Features

Do not attempt to replicate font features such as bold and italic (e.g., when used to indicate a scientific name) through the use of underlining or other means of indicating such features.

Pre-Modern Forms of Letters

In general, transcribe letters as they appear in the source. However, convert earlier forms of letters and earlier forms of diacritical marks into their modern form, as specified herein. If there is any doubt as to the correct conversion of elements to modern forms, transcribe them from the source as exactly as possible. (See also the section on *Special Letters, Diacritical Marks, and Punctuation Marks*.)

The following represent a special case: u/v, uu, or vv/w. When these letters are used in Latin and some other languages without regard to their vocalic or consonantal value, so that "u" is used for a "v," etc., the transcription should be regularized. This means that for the bibliographic description of items published after 1800,

- 1) use v for consonants, e.g., vox, Victoria;
- 2) use u for vowels, e.g., uva, Ursa Major;
- 3) use w for consonantal uu or vv, e.g., Windelia.

Follow this guide also for publications of any date when the case is not one of bibliographic description, e.g., headings or citations from reference works.

The letters i/j should be handled differently. For the bibliographic descriptions of items published after 1800, transcribe "i" and "j" as they appear; do not attempt any regularization. *PCC practice*: Follow this stipulation also for uniform titles for series. *

For any other case of headings, citations from reference sources, etc.,

- 1) use j for consonants, e.g., jus, Julius;
- 2) use i for vowels, e.g., iter, Ilias.

N.B. For the transcription of any of these letters in bibliographic description for pre-1801 publications, apply *Descriptive Cataloging of Rare Books* (DCRB). For the use of uniform titles, so that DCRB titles file properly (i.e., together with the titles of post-1800 publications), see LCRI 25.1. *

1.0E

Matter That Cannot Be Reproduced by the Facilities Available

The rule, in effect, requires as much fidelity to the source as the technical capacity within the cataloging agency will allow. It recommends a "cataloguer's description in square brackets" for any "matter that cannot be reproduced by the facilities available." Generally, this is a practicable solution, but there are special instances in which doing other than describing the matter is appropriate. The main purposes of these instructions are to categorize all the methods to be employed, including a "cataloguer's description," and to give specific directions for each in terms of the particular character set phenomenon encountered.

In the context of machine-readable catalog records note that as used in 1.0E and in the preceding paragraph, "facilities available" means the totality of characters that can be represented in machine-readable form and displayed/printed (known as the "MARC-8 character set"; referred to hereafter as the "character set"). These characters can also be represented in the UCS/Unicode UTF-8 character set, but the guidelines in this LCRI apply only to that subset of the Unicode UTF-8 set that has a counterpart in MARC-8, i.e., the MARC repertoire of UTF-8. Conventions appropriate to particular character set situations have been developed as follows:

- Super/subscript characters
- Greek letters
- Special marks of contraction (e.g., older printed Latin)
- Special letters, diacritical marks, punctuation marks
- Signs and symbols

Apply the appropriate conventions described in the sections below. As judged appropriate, use notes to explain and added entries to provide additional access. In the special provisions below, notes are suggested as possible models for form, not to require the use of the note.

Super/Subscript Characters

If the super/subscript placement of a character is not essential to avoid serious distortion or loss of intelligibility (e.g., n^o, 2^e, M^a), record the super/subscript character on the line in the regular manner (e.g., no., 2e). If a period is associated with the super/subscript letter (e.g., M.^a) and the characters are the abbreviation of a single word, record the period as the last element (e.g., Ma.). In case of serious distortion or loss of intelligibility, record the character in super/subscript position for all such characters available in the character set, namely, Arabic numerals (0-9), the minus sign (-), parentheses (()), and the plus sign (+). In all other cases use the double underscore convention described in the section on *Special Letters, Diacritical Marks, and Punctuation Marks*. Give the letter being represented in upper or lower case according to the source.

chief source: The Severus scroll and 1QIs^a

transcription: 245 14 \$a The Severus scroll and the 1QIsa

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "a" is superscript

chief source: Separation of $^{59}\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}$ and $^{59}\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}$ in neutron ...
transcription: 245 10 \$a Separation of $^{59}\text{Fe}^{\text{III}}$ and $^{59}\text{Fe}^{\text{II}}$ in
 neutron ...

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. " $^{\text{III}}$ " and " $^{\text{II}}$ " are
 superscript

chief source: Estimating $L_x(1)$

transcription: 245 10 \$a Estimating $L_x(1)$

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. " x " is subscript

chief source: ENDOR hyperfine constants of V_k -type centers

transcription: 245 10 \$a ENDOR hyperfine constants of V_k -
 type centers

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. " k " is subscript

chief source: The structure of $1f_{7/2}$ nuclei

transcription: 245 14 \$a The structure of $1f_{7/2}$ nuclei

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. " $7/2$ " is subscript

Greek Letters

In roman script records romanize all occurrences of Greek letters regardless of the facilities available (the intent is to assist filing and searching even though there are characters for alpha, beta, and gamma in the character set and certain Greek capital letters are identical to their roman equivalents). If the context shows that a Greek letter or letters is used to represent a letter in the International Phonetic Alphabet, however, see the section on *Special Letters, Diacritical Marks, and Punctuation Marks*.

If the letter appears separately, give the name of the letter in the language of the context (if unknown in the language of the context, use English) enclosed within brackets. For searching purposes, insure that the bracketed interpolation is not connected with other letters. Thus, if no space appears in the source on either side of the Greek letter, put a space on either side of the bracketed interpolation, except when this interpolation is already distinct from adjacent letters by the presence of characters that serve as separators. *N.B.* This provision is necessary, because brackets do not serve as separators for searching purposes.¹

chief source: α -, β -, and γ -spectroscopy

¹ "Separators" are defined as characters that divide groups of letters or numbers into multiple words, in the context of constructing search queries. The most frequent examples are the ISBD marks of punctuation, as well as opening and closing parentheses, the hyphen, and double quotes.

transcription: 245 10 \$a [Alpha]-, [beta]-, and [gamma]-
spectroscopy

(A hyphen is a separator)

chief source: Poly- α -amino acids ...

transcription: 245 10 \$aPoly-[alpha]-amino acids ...

chief source: A history of π (pi) ...

transcription: 245 12 \$a A history of [pi] (pi) ...

(Parentheses are separators, but a space precedes "(pi)" in the source)

chief source: ... at infinity of certain subclasses of $L^1 \Omega A(\mathbb{R})$

transcription: 245 10 \$a ... at infinity of certain
subclasses of $L^1 [\Omega] A(\mathbb{R})$

(The omega in the source is a capital letter)

chief source: A catalogue of the Connecticut Alpha of the ΦBK ,
August 1847

transcription: 245 12 \$a A catalogue of the Connecticut
Alpha of the [Phi Beta Kappa],
August 1847

chief source: The $\cos \pi \lambda$ theorem ...

transcription: 245 14 \$a The cos [pi lambda] theorem ...

chief source: ... materials lists for high-power 10.6 μ windows ...

transcription: 245 10 \$a ... materials lists for high-power
10.6 [mu] windows ...

chief source: The bias in $dT/d \Delta$ calculated ...

transcription: 245 14 \$a The bias in $dT/d [\Delta]$ calculated
...

chief source: Z

transcription: 245 10 \$a [Zeta]

(The title consists solely of the Greek letter zeta)

When a Greek letter is used in a word that is otherwise in the roman alphabet in the source, use the romanized form of the letter (instead of its name) in brackets.

chief source: Zara θ ustra and Φ ilo

transcription: 245 10 \$a Zara[th]ustra and [Ph]ilo

chief source: Oie wowapi wa η Lakota-Ieska

transcription: 245 10 \$a Oie wowapi wa[u] Lakota-Ieska

(The letter in this example is from the International Phonetic Alphabet; therefore, the double underscore convention is used (cf. the section on Special Letters, Diacritical Marks, and Punctuation Marks))

Special Marks of Contraction

When special marks of contraction have been used by the printer in continuance of the manuscript tradition, expand affected words to their full form, enclosing supplied letters within brackets.

on source: Breuiarium monasticū s'm ritum **¶** morem
monacho[¶] Ordinis S. Benedicti de obseruātia Casinēsis
Cōgregationis ...

transcription: 245 10 \$a Breuiarium monasticu[m] s[ecundu]m
ritum [et] morem monacho[rum]
Ordinis S. Benedicti de
obserua[n]tia Casine[n]sis
Co[n]gregationis ...

Do not expand conventional abbreviations in which a period follows a letter or letters. However, when an abbreviation standing for an entire word appears in the source, record instead the word itself, enclosing it in brackets, e.g., "... amico[rum] [et] ..." When the meaning of an abbreviation or contraction cannot be determined, substitute a question mark within brackets for each element in question, e.g., "... amico[?] [?] ..." When the meaning of an abbreviation or contraction is conjectural, use the question mark after the supplied letters or word within the same set of brackets, e.g., "... amico[rum?] ..."

When titles are "expanded," title added entries may be generated by the first indicator in the 245 field. The added entry will be exactly the same as the title proper (including the brackets around letters). To express a title added entry in any other form, use a 246 field.

246 3# \$a Breviarium monasticum secundum ritum et morem
monachorum Ordinis Sancti Benedicti de
observantia Casinensis Congregationis

Special Letters, Diacritical Marks, and Punctuation Marks

Use the double underscore () as the conventional means of signaling special letters (including superscript and subscript letters), diacritical marks, and punctuation marks for which there is no exact representation in the character set. Use the double underscore with the nearest roman equivalent in cases in which the roman equivalent is obvious, e.g., **ḃ** = b; **ḏ** = d; **ḑ** = q; **f** = f; **ḥ** = h; **ḡ** = g; **ḷ** = l; **ṫ** = t. When the nearest roman equivalent is not obvious or there is doubt that it is obvious, it is necessary to establish the equivalent, after which the list of equivalencies will be updated. The equivalencies below have been established to date, mostly from the International

1.0E

Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). Note that the IPA uses some Greek letters; when it is judged by the context (usually some form of linguistic study) that the Greek letter probably derives from its use in the IPA, use the double underscore convention or the equivalency indicated below, not the convention for Greek letters given above.

$\alpha = \underline{\underline{a}}$

$\beta = \underline{\underline{d}}$

$\epsilon = \underline{\underline{e}}$

$\phi = \underline{\underline{f}}$

$\gamma = \underline{\underline{g}}$

$\tau = \underline{\underline{g}}$ $\rho = \underline{\underline{g}}$

$\iota = \underline{\underline{i}}$ $\beta = \underline{\underline{I}}$

$\lambda = \underline{\underline{l}}$

$\omicron = \underline{\underline{o}}$

$\sigma = \underline{\underline{s}}$

$\int = \underline{\underline{s}}$

$\theta = \underline{\underline{t}}$

$\upsilon = \underline{\underline{u}}$

$\nu = \underline{\underline{u}}$

$\nu = \underline{\underline{v}}$

$\beta = \underline{\underline{v}}$

$\mu = \underline{\underline{w}}$

$\zeta = \underline{\underline{z}}$

Note that the use of the double underscore convention does not always insure a one-for-one equivalency; the intent, instead, is to signal those cases in which the character used in the catalog record is not an exact replication of the character in the source.

Exception: Do not use the double underscore convention in the following cases; use instead the equivalent indicated:

Old German small "e" (Fúrsten) = umlaut (Fürsten)

"Scharfes s" or "ess-zet" (ß) written as ligature = ss (Ausslegung)

"Scharfes s" or "ess-zet" (ſ) written as two letters = sz (Auslegung)

Schwa (ə) = ä (e.g., as found in roman alphabet Azerbaijani)

Inch/inches, second/seconds = hard sign, double prime (tvěrdýĭ znak) (")

Foot/feet, minute/minutes = soft sign, prime (mĭâgkĭĭ znak) (´)

Superscript or subscript period = dot above (˙) or dot below (̇)

IPA character for glottal stop (ʔ) = ayn (ʿ)

A T below a letter (ɀ) = dot below the letter (̣)

Signs and Symbols

The objective in treating signs and symbols not represented in the character set is to render or convey the intention without undue time and effort and with a minimum of interpolation, using one of the techniques described in this section. Note that a minimum of interpolation is wanted because those searching the machine catalog cannot very often be expected to "second-guess" the cataloger in this respect, i.e., users will normally formulate search queries that necessarily do not take interpolations into account. As judged appropriate, use notes to explain and added entries to provide additional access; the examples below are illustrative, not prescriptive.

1) If the symbol is judged not to be an integral or essential part of the title, do not intervene in the transcription. Instead, omit the symbol; explain its presence in a note if it is judged worth mentioning.

transcription: 245 10 \$a "W" today! Tomorrow?
(On the title page the traditional female symbol appears under the letter "W" but the preface makes it clear that the symbol is not intended to form part of the title and gives the full title)

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. the symbol for female appears under the letter "W"

added entry: 246 30 \$a Women today! Tomorrow?

2) Use existing characters when this can be done without serious distortion or loss of intelligibility.

chief source: L for tomorrow

transcription: 245 10 \$a Rx for tomorrow

chief source: When I was your age

was your age STOP

transcription: 245 10 \$a When I 

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "STOP" appears as a stop sign

3) Use the double underscore convention (cf. the section on *Special Letters, Diacritical Marks, and Punctuation Marks.*)

chief source: Yell-θ pages : environmental resources

transcription: 245 10 \$a Yell-o pages : environmental resources

chief source: Where to stay USA from 50¢ to \$9 a night

transcription: 245 10 \$a Where to stay USA from 50c to \$9 a night

4) Substitute in the language of the context the word, phrase, etc., that is the obvious spoken/written equivalent (if unknown in the language of the context, use English); bracket the interpolated equivalent. If the element in the source is not preceded or followed by a space, in general precede or follow the bracketed interpolation by a space unless the preceding or following character in the source is itself also a separator or unless the use of a space would create an unintended result for searching.

chief source: I ♥ a piano

transcription: 245 10 \$a I [love] a piano

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "[love]" appears as a heart

chief source: A study of the †

transcription: 245 12 \$a A study of the [ankh]

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "[ankh]" appears as the ankh symbol

chief source: Poe  and free verse

transcription: 245 10 \$a Poe[try] and free verse

(The interpolation is not preceded by a space because that would create two words for searching (brackets are not separators))

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "[try]" appears as an illustration in the form of a tree

chief source: Tinglysningslovens §38

transcription: 245 10 \$a Tinglysningslovens [paragraf] 38

chief source: Dokumentation der politischen Geschichte zur Reform des §144 STG

transcription: 245 10 \$a Dokumentation der politischen Geschichte zur Reform des [Paragraphen] 144 STG

chief source: ... proposed rules governing §2255 proceedings ...

transcription: 245 10 \$a ... \$b ... proposed rules governing [section] 2255 proceedings ...

chief source: Roman Opalka : 16 Details aus dem Werk 1965/1-∞

transcription: 245 10 \$a Roman Opalka : \$b 16 Details aus dem Werk 1965/1-[unendlich]

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "[unendlich]" appears as the infinity symbol)

chief source: Opalka 1965/1-∞ : 9 juin-9 juillet 1982

transcription: 245 10 \$a Opalka 1965/1-[l'infinité] : \$b 9 juin-9 juillet 1982

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "[l'infinité]" appears as the infinity symbol

chief source: The added mass coefficient of a cylinder oscillating in shallow water in the limit $K \rightarrow 0$ and K_∞

transcription: 245 14 \$a The added mass coefficient of a cylinder oscillating in shallow water in the limit $K \rightarrow 0$ and K [infinity]

(The arrow is input as two hyphens and an angle bracket)

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "[infinity]" appears as the infinity symbol

Exception 1: Do not transcribe characters that indicate birth (e.g., an asterisk) or death (e.g., a dagger) even if such characters are in the character set. Do not use a mark of omission; instead, explain the omission in a note.

chief source: In honor of Saint Basil the Great †379

transcription: 245 10 \$a In honor of Saint Basil the Great 379

suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "379" is preceded by a dagger

chief source: Walter : *1926 ✕1945 an der Ostfront
transcription: 245 00 \$a Walter : \$b 1926 1945 an der
Ostfront
suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "1926" is preceded by an
asterisk; "1945" is preceded by
an Iron Cross

Exception 2: Ignore symbols indicating trademark (registered or otherwise), patent, etc. These include a superscript or subscript "R" enclosed in a circle (®) (ignore although included in the character set) and the superscript or subscript letters "TM" (™). Do not explain their presence in a note. (Ignore such symbols also when they appear with elements used in headings.)

chief source: The Gumby® books of letters
transcription: 245 14 \$a The Gumby books of letters

If the spoken/written equivalent is not obvious or if there is doubt that it is obvious or if it is unknown, give an explanation or a description in the language of the context (if unknown in the language of the context, use English).

chief source: ∇-structures
transcription: 245 10 \$a [Inverted triangle]-structures

chief source: Poluprovodnikovye soedieniã A₂B^{VI}
transcription: 245 10 \$a Poluprovodnikovye soedieniã AI2BVI
suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "I" appears over "2" and
"VI" is superscript

chief source: Some elementary properties of the category
Top_M | B
transcription: 245 10 \$a Some elementary properties of the
category Top_M | B
suggested note: 500 ## \$a On t.p. "M" is subscript

If a title consists solely of a sign or symbol or one or more marks of punctuation, provide an equivalent in all cases, even if the particular symbol is itself in the character set.

chief source: ☩ / Gregory Corso
transcription: 245 10 \$a [Ankh] / \$c Gregory Corso
suggested note: 500 ## \$a The title consists solely of the
ankh symbol

chief source: + : [novellaciklus] / Czakó Gábor
transcription: 245 10 \$a [Plusz : \$b novellaciklus] / \$c
Czakó Gábor
("+" is in the character set)
suggested note: 500 ## \$a The title consists solely of a

plus sign

chief source: © / Free Spirits, Inc.

transcription: 245 10 \$a [Copyright] / \$c Free Spirits, Inc.
(“©” is in the character set)

suggested note: 500 ## \$a The title consists solely of the
the copyright symbol

chief source: ---- / Edvardas Gudavičius

transcription: 245 10 \$a [Keturi brūkšniai] / \$c Edvardas
Gudavičius.

suggested note: 500 ## The title consists solely of four
hyphens

but

chief source: ????? Steele’s answers, by Daniel Steele ...

transcription: 245 10 \$a ????? Steele’s answers / \$c by
Daniel Steele ...

*(Although the title begins with marks of punctuation, it also
contains indexable data and no special intervention is required)*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

 1.6. SERIES AREA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction**Organization of the LCRIS on Series****Series or Phrases**

- 1) Unnumbered statement of the name of the body from which the publication emanated
- 2) Numbered statement of the name of the body from which the publication emanated
- 3) Unnumbered/numbered statement of the commercial publisher
- 4) Statement of in-house editor, etc.
- 5) Lecture series
- 6) Combination of letters or letters and numbers
- 7) Slogan, motto, etc.
- 8) Unnumbered genre/characterizing word in singular form
- 9) Unnumbered phrase indicating a broad subject or category
- 10) Captions in publisher's listing

Republications**Selected Issues of Periodicals Published Separately****Supplements and Special Numbers to Serials****Series Title Grammatically Connected to Title of Item****Motion Pictures, Television Programs, and Videorecordings**

Introduction

Transcribe in the series area the title of any comprehensive publication (monographic series, other serial, multipart item, integrating resource) of which the item is a part.

Unless a specific category is mentioned, the term "series" in any of the 1.6 LCRIS means any of the comprehensive publications mentioned above.

Organization of the LCRIS on Series

This general LCRI (1.6) addresses situations in which a series statement should be given in a bibliographic record. LCRI 1.6A2 gives information about sources for the series statement. LCRIS for 1.6B-C, E-H deal with the separate data elements given in a series statement. LCRI 1.6J includes information about some special situations in which more than one series statement is given. The

1.6

intent is that these LCRIS deal with the series statement only as an area of bibliographic description; however, until a new introductory rule or LCRI is written for AACR2 Chapter 21, LCRI 1.6 and LCRI 1.6H will continue to include some information about the number of series headings appropriate to specific situations.

See AACR2 rule 21.30L and LCRI 21.30L for information about access points for series.

* LC has announced a change in policy applying to all bibliographic resources
* (monographs, serials, and integrating resources) in series. As of June 1, 2006, LC
* analyzes and classifies separately all parts of monographic series and of multipart
* monographs with the exception of those categories listed in LCRI 13.3.

* As of the same date, LC does not give “controlled” access points for series in new LC
* original cataloging (CIP and non-CIP) bibliographic records, does not update series
* access points in existing bibliographic records, and does not consult, make, or update
* series authority records. (Exception for consulting SARRS: see LCRI 25.5B for
* determining “conflict.”) LC will “pass through” the series information already in
* bibliographic records used by LC as copy (CIP/LC partner records, PCC records, and
* non-PCC (including Casalini) records).

* The PCC Policy Committee has announced that the PCC series policy remains
* unchanged.

Series or Phrases

Distinguish between phrases that are true series and those that are not, with the latter sometimes included elsewhere in the bibliographic record (e.g., given as a quoted note) and sometimes not transcribed at all. A decision on series vs. phrase does not apply to such specific information as publishers' and plate numbers for printed music or publishers' stock numbers for sound recordings; such numbers are addressed in AACR2 rules 5.7B19 and 6.7B19.

* *PCC practice:* If a decision concerning the phrase has not been recorded in the national authority file, base the current decision primarily on judgment. The guidelines below apply to some common situations; it is *not* a closed list. Generally, make SARRS for categories 1) through 5).

1) If the phrase is essentially an unnumbered statement of the name of the body from which the item emanates, reject it as a series. Give the phrase as a quoted note if the name of the emanating body is not given elsewhere in the bibliographic record (e.g., in the publication, distribution, etc., area; in a note for the issuing body).

in source: An American Astronautical Society Publication

260 ## \$a San Diego, Calif. : \$b Published for the
American Astronautical Society by Univelt, \$c
1992.

(Reject the phrase as a series; do not give it as a quoted note)

in source: An Evangelical Theological Society Publication

260 ## \$a Grand Rapids : \$b Zondervan, \$c 1987.
 500 ## \$a "An Evangelical Theological Society
 publication."

(Reject the phrase as a series; give it as a quoted note)

2) If the phrase is essentially a *numbered* statement of the name, initialism/acronym, or part of the name of the body from which it emanated and that body is not a commercial publisher, transcribe the information in the series area.

in source: Buckinghamshire Record Society No. 21

4XX \$a Buckinghamshire Record Society ; \$v no. 21

in source: HAZ 6

4XX \$a HAZ ; \$v 6

3) If the phrase is essentially a numbered/unnumbered statement of the commercial publisher or includes a sub-imprint name or name of a subsidiary, a division, etc., of a publishing firm, reject it as a series. Give the phrase as a quoted note if the name is not given in the publication, distribution, etc., area.

in source: DAW Books No. 761

260 ## \$a New York : \$b DAW Books, \$c 1991.

(Reject the phrase as a series; do not give it as a quoted note)

in source: A Raccoon Pamphlet

260 ## \$a Memphis, Tenn. : \$b Raccoon Books, \$c 1982.

(Reject the phrase as a series; do not give it as a quoted note)

in source: An Interscience publication

260 ## \$a New York : \$b Wiley, \$c 1993.

500 ## \$a "An Interscience publication."

(Reject the phrase as a series; give as a quoted note)

4) If the phrase includes the name of an in-house editor or the name or designation of some other official of the firm, etc., reject it as a series. Give the phrase as a quoted note.

500 ## \$a "A Helen and Kurt Wolff book."

5) If a named lecture series appears on the item as a series title, i.e., it is not extracted from another context (e.g., other title information, prefatory material) *and* it has or is likely to have data that remain constant from issue to issue, treat the name of the lecture series as a series title. In case of doubt, do not treat the name as a series. If the name is rejected as a series, record the name in the title and statement of responsibility area or give the name with associated data in a quoted note.

245 10 \$a From morality to religion : \$b being the
 Gifford lecture delivered at the University of

St.Andrews, 1938 / \$c ...

245 10 \$a Lincoln--an immortal sign \$h [sound recording]
: \$b the first lecture in the Lincoln
sesquicentennial lectures, The enduring Lincoln
/ \$c ...

500 ## \$a "Stephanos Nirmalendu Ghose lectures on
comparative religion, 1972-73"--3rd prelim. p.

6) Do not treat as a series a number that cannot be associated with a series title. Generally, do not treat as a series a combination of letters or letters and numbers that cannot be associated with a series title if there is evidence that the combination is assigned either to every item the entity issues for control purposes or to certain groups of items for internal control or identification. Give the information as a quoted note; do not give the note on a bibliographic record for a serial.

500 ## \$a "UC-13."
500 ## \$a "CRN 780206-00050."
500 ## \$a "SP-MN."

7) If the phrase is a slogan, motto, prize, etc., reject it as a series. Give it as a quoted note if it appears on the chief source.

in source: 25 años de paz
(Reject the phrase as a series)

in source: 50-letiiū pobedy posviāshchaetsiā
("Dedicated to the 50th anniversary of the victory")
(Reject the phrase as a series)

in source: Workers of the whole world, unite!
(Reject the phrase as a series)

in source: Premio Casa de las Américas 1994
(Reject the phrase as a series)

8) If an unnumbered genre/characterizing word in the singular form or plural form having singular meaning (e.g., "Novel," "Mystery," "Témoignage," "Essai," "Piano solo," "Graphics," "Multimedia") appears only on the cover or container, reject it as a series. Generally, do not give it as a quoted note.

9) If an unnumbered phrase indicating a broad subject or category (e.g., "Computers," "Etiquette," "Contemporary history," "Educational software") appears only on page 4 of cover or the flaps or on container, reject it as a series; the phrase is provided by the publisher/manufacturer for retail stores, etc. Do not give it as a quoted note.

10) If the publisher's listing is subdivided into broad categories, generally do not consider the captions to be series titles unless (a) the same phrases appear elsewhere in the item as series titles, (b) the phrases include a word such as "series," "library," "collection," etc., or (c) there is other evidence of intent to consider the captions to be series titles (e.g., the titles listed under each caption are numbered sequentially). Do not give as quoted notes.

in source: Romans et nouvelles
 (listing of six titles with authors -- no numbering)
 Théorie et essais
 (listing of four titles with authors -- no numbering)
 (Reject both captions as series titles: words do not appear elsewhere as series titles)

in source: Vocal solos
 (listing of nine titles --- no numbering)
 Choral arrangements
 (listing of ten titles --- no numbering)
 Dance orchestrations
 (listing of three titles -- no numbering)
 (Reject all captions as series titles: words do not appear elsewhere as series titles)

Republications

When cataloging a republication, transcribe in the series area a series statement relating only to the republication.

```
4XX $a Pierpont Morgan Library music manuscript reprint
    series
4XX $a Reprints in Canadian history
```

In the bibliographic history note, transcribe, in parentheses, a series statement for the original series only if the original series statement was also reproduced in the republication. (Cf. LCRI 2.7B7)

Selected Issues of Periodicals Published Separately

Several publishers (e.g., Haworth Press, Pergamon Press) publish separate hardcover or softcover editions of *selected* issues of their periodicals.

LC/PCC practice: Do not consider such a separately published issue to constitute an integral part of the periodical, i.e., do not consider it an analyzable issue of the periodical. In the bibliographic record for the separately published issue, give the pertinent information as a note, not as a series statement. (Cf. LCRI 21.30G for the related work added entry.)

```
500 ## $a Published also as v. 17, no. 1/2, 1993 of the
    Cataloging and classification quarterly.
```

Supplements and Special Numbers to Serials

Numbered supplements. Treat a numbered supplement to a serial as a series.

in source: Supplement to Word
monograph number 3
4XX \$a Supplement to Word ; \$v monograph no. 3

in source: Journal of Ultrastructure Research
Supplement 7
4XX \$a Journal of ultrastructure research. \$p
Supplement ; \$v 7

Special numbers and unnumbered supplements

LC/PCC practice: Do not treat a special number or an unnumbered supplement to a serial as a series. Give the information in a note if it is not already recorded in the title and statement of responsibility area. (Cf. LCRI 21.30G for the related work added entry.)

500 ## \$a Special number of Malaysian journal of
tropical geography.
500 ## \$a "Supplemento all'Annuario statistico
italiano"—T.p. verso.
500 ## \$a "Allegato al n. 7/85 di Musica jazz."

(*Note:* A supplement that is numbered only in relation to a particular number of a serial (e.g., supplements 1 and 2 to v. 10, no. 1 of the serial) is considered to be unnumbered since there isn't a separate numbering system for that supplement.)

Series Title Grammatically Connected to Title of Item

LC/PCC practice: If the series title is grammatically linked to the title of the item being cataloged, do *not* separate the series title from the latter. Record the grammatically-linked title as the title proper of the item; record information in the series area only if the series title is presented separately in another source in the item.

title on t.p.: Case Presentations in Heart Disease
another source lists titles: Case Presentations in Arterial Disease,
Case Presentations in Clinical Geriatric Medicine, Case
Presentations in Endocrinology and Diabetes, Case
Presentations in Gastrointestinal Diseases, etc.
no source in item giving series title "Case Presentations" separately

100 1# \$a Mackintosh, Alan.
245 10 \$a Case presentations in heart disease
(no 4XX field)

Motion Pictures, Television Programs, and Videorecordings

Note: LC uses the cataloging manual *Archival Moving Image Materials* for its moving image materials cataloging. This manual has different guidelines than those in AACR2 about the choice and construction of titles proper and series titles.

PCC practice: Use AACR2 when cataloging motion pictures, television programs, and videorecordings. Do not request changes in LC's bibliographic records for motion pictures, television programs, and videorecordings.

*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

1.6A2. SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Sources

The sources for series in the “Prescribed sources of information” in the monograph chapters (2.0B2, 3.0B3, 5.0B2, 6.0B2, etc.) are in priority order, reflecting the principle in 12.0B2.

LC/NACO practice: For main series and subseries, however, use a source within the prescribed sources that has both titles – cf. LCRI 1.6H.

Clarification of Eligible Sources

In chapters 2, 5, and 12, the first of the sources in the priority-order list is “series title page.” That source is a physical location within the bibliographic resource: either the page opposite the analytical title page or the page in the position of the half t.p. if the series title is present. “Series title page” is not a general term implying whatever source has the series title (e.g., the cover or the analytic t.p. verso is not a series title page).

In chapters 2, 5, and 12, the second source is variously identified as “monograph title page,” “title page,” and “analytical title page.” In all cases, only the recto of the title page is to be considered as this second source. (As noted in the definition of “Preliminaries,” the verso of a title page is a different location.)

Other Sources for Series Statements

If the series statement appears on a label or is stamped on the item, transcribe the series statement without brackets. If the series statement appears on the jacket, transcribe the series statement within brackets. Record in a note the source of the series statement.

LC practice: Do not modify existing bibliographic records created when LC's practice excluded series statements appearing on jackets.

```
500 ## $a Series statement from label on t.p.
500 ## $a Series statement stamped on cover.
500 ## $a Series statement on jacket.
```

Information Embedded in Text

A series statement does not need to be formally presented.

LC/NACO practice: Generally, for printed material, accept information embedded within text in the preliminaries, in the colophon, or on the jacket as a source for the series title. However, if the extraneous information cannot be readily omitted or its omission would be confusing, transcribe the whole as a quoted note. Generally, do not accept information embedded within prefatory matter or the text proper as a source for the series; instead, transcribe the information as a quoted note and follow the quotation by an indication of its source.

1.6A2

500 ## \$a "First book in the Guide to reading the Bible
series"—Pt. 1, p. 4.

* **Series Statement Present Only in Cataloging Data/Bibliography**

*

* *LC/PCC practice:* If the series statement appears only in cataloging data (foreign or domestic)
* in the item or in a bibliography, do not transcribe this information in the series area.

*

* **Series Statement Present Only on CIP Data Sheet or ECIP Data View**

*

* *LC practice:* If the series statement appears only on the CIP data sheet or the ECIP data view
* at galley stage, do not transcribe this information in the series area and do not contact CIP or the
* publisher.

1.6B. TITLE PROPER OF SERIES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Inaccuracy in Title Proper of Series ***Only Some Parts in a Series****Embedded Series Titles****Series Title in Two or More Languages or Scripts****Single Letter or Group of Letters at End of Title Proper****Recording Section Title Without the Title Common to All Sections****Single Series Statement Encompassing More Than One Series****Inaccuracy in Title Proper of Series** *

Do not correct an inaccuracy in the title proper of a series; transcribe such an inaccuracy according to rule 1.0F1. If the series title proper appears in full and in the form of an acronym or initialism in the prescribed source for the series area, the choice of which form to transcribe as series title proper in the series area is cataloger's judgment. *

PCC practice *

When determining headings in series authority records for serials (including monographic series) and integrating resources: 1) if there is an inaccuracy in the title proper, correct that inaccuracy in the heading (rule 12.1B1); 2) if the series title appears in full and as an acronym or initialism in the prescribed source, use the full form in the heading (rule 12.1B2). For multipart monograph headings, correct any inaccuracy; the choice of full form vs. acronym or initialism in the heading for a multipart monograph is cataloger's judgment. *

Only Some Parts in a Series

If some parts of an item are issued in a series and the other parts are not, precede the series title with an indication of the particular parts to which the series title applies. Separate the indication of the particular parts from the series title with a colon-space.

300 \$a 2 v. ; \$c 28 cm.

490 \$a v. 1: Dance and dancers to-day ; \$v 13

LC practice: When only some parts of an item are issued in a series and the series is

1.6B

classified as a collection, include the call number of the series, enclosed in parentheses, at the end of the series statement.

490 \$a 1974- : Alaska local government \$1 (JS3.A4A64)
(*Series statement is on a bibliographic record for a serial;
numbering of volumes in series is not included*)

Embedded Series Titles

If a series statement is not formally presented, select the series title proper carefully, ensuring that extraneous words the publisher did not intend to be part of the title proper are excluded.

p. preceding t.p.: Concrete city is the fourteenth volume in the
Essential poets series published by Guernica
Editions

4XX \$a Essential poets ; \$v 14th v.

t.p. verso: This book is #9 in the DAMASCUS ROAD continuing
series of modern writing and is published at 6271 Hill
Drive, Wescosville, Route #2, Pennsylvania.

4XX \$a Damascus road ; \$v #9

Series Title in Two or More Languages or Scripts

If a series title appears in two or more languages or scripts, choose as the title proper for the series statement the title that matches the language (or the clearly predominant language) of the particular item being cataloged. If this criterion cannot be applied, choose the first series title as the title proper. (For recording series titles in other languages or scripts as parallel titles, see AACR2 rule 1.6C and LCRI 1.6C.)

Single Letter or Group of Letters at End of Title Proper

When a letter or group of letters is presented in the item in combination with its numbering, determine whether the letter or letters constitutes a part of the title proper or part of the numbering system. Consider the letter or letters to constitute part of the title proper if, were the letter or letters omitted from the title proper and recorded as part of numbering, the resulting title would be identical to other series titles emanating from the same corporate body.

in source: Report-HTKK-TKO-A41

4XX \$a Report-HTKK-TKO-A ; \$v 41

in source: Report-HTKK-TKO-B41

4XX \$a Report-HTKK-TKO-B ; \$v 41

in source: Bulletin A1

4XX \$a Bulletin. A ; \$v 1

in source: Bulletin B1
4XX \$a Bulletin. B ; \$v 1

When information is not available or in case of doubt, treat the letter or letters as part of the numbering system (cf. LCRI 1.6G).

in source: Study AB-1
4XX \$a Study ; \$v AB-1

in source: Study AB-2
4XX \$a Study ; \$v AB-2

Recording Subseries Title When Main Series Title is Not Present

AACR2 rule 12.1B6 stipulates that "If the title of a section or supplement is presented in the chief source of information without the title that is common to all sections, give the title of the section or supplement as the title proper." For purposes of recording information in the series area, "section" refers to a subseries title and "common title" generally refers to a main series title. In some cases, the title proper comprises a configuration that would be regarded as a designation of a subseries followed by the subseries title were a main series title present.

Serie G, Estudios doctrinales
Serie E, Varios
Serie B, Forskningsrapporter

LC/PCC practice: When such configurations are being recorded in the absence of a main series title, use a dash (two adjacent hyphens) in place of a comma-space to make it absolutely clear that the entire configuration is the title. *

4XX \$a Serie G-Estudios doctrinales ; \$v 26
4XX \$a Serie E-Varios / Instituto de Investigaciones
Jurídicas ; \$v 8
4XX \$a Serie B--Forskningsrapporter / Yleisradio Oy.,
Suunnittelu- ja tutkimusosasto ; \$v 3

Single Series Statement Encompassing More Than One Series

When the series statement on the resource being cataloged encompasses more than one series, transcribe the information according to the guidelines below.

a) *Single series statement.* If the information is presented with no or minimal extraneous wording, transcribe it as a single series statement.

1.6B

in source: Publicación núm. 3 del Centro de Estudios Bilbitanos y
núm 750 de la Institución “Fernando el Católico”

4XX §a Publicación núm. 3 del Centro de Estudios
Bilbitanos y núm 750 de la Institución
“Fernando el Católico”

b) *Quoted note.* If the information includes extraneous wording grammatically linked or not easily omitted, transcribe it as a quoted note.

500 §a “Ce volume fait également partie de ...
Grandes publications tome XXIII, et de la
collection des Cahiers de l’Association
interuniversitaire de l’Est dont il
constitue le no 21.”

1.6G. NUMBERING WITHIN SERIES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General**More Than One System of Numbering****Numbering Combined with One or More Letters****Numbering Consisting of a Full/Partial Indication of Year and Numeral****Parallel Titles and Numbers****Editions with Identical Series Numbering****Inferred Numbering****Numbering Present Only in Cataloging Data/Bibliography****Numbering of and within a Specific Activity, Event****General**

PCC practice: See AACR2 rule 21.30L and LCRI 21.30L for information about recording numbering in access points for series. *

See the LCRI for appendix B.5 for information related to substituting a found abbreviation with a different prescribed abbreviation.

LC/PCC practice: For ordinal numbers, see LCRI C.8. *

LC practice: Record superscript letters "on the line" (e.g., "n^o." as "no." or "2^{ème}" as "2ème") as stated in LCRI 1.0E, "Super/Subscript Characters" section.

More Than One System of Numbering*Option Decision*

LC/PCC practice: Generally, record all separate systems of numeric designations in the series statement. *Note:* Consider a series to have more than one *system* of numbering only if there is a one-to-one relationship between each numeric system and the item itself.

in source: Band 6 Nummer 2
3. Jahrgang
Nummer 32

4XX \$a _____ ; \$v Bd. 6, Nr. 2 = Nr. 32
not 4XX \$a _____ ; \$v Bd. 6, Nr. 2 = 3. Jahrg. =
Nr. 32

(not a one-to-one relationship between "3. Jahrgang" and items in series)

in source: new series 5 (94)
(i.e., 5 in new series, whole number 94)

4XX \$a _____ ; \$v new ser., 5 = 94

Numbering Combined with One or More Letters

If the number is combined with one or more letters, generally transcribe the letter(s) as part of the numbering unless the letter(s) is (are) transcribed at the end of the title proper (cf. LCRI 1.6B).

Numbering Consisting of a Full/Partial Indication of Year and Numeral

If the numeral is combined with a full or partial indication of a year, determine if the year is the publication date or if the year is serving as a volume number and the numeral is a sequential number within that year. If the year is the publication date, omit the year information when transcribing the number. If the year is serving as a volume number (cf. rule 12.3C4), give the year before the number. In case of doubt, assume that the year is serving as a volume number.

in source: 1-1996
(year is publication date)

4XX \$a _____ ; \$v 1

in source: 1-1995
(year is serving as volume number)

4XX \$a _____ ; \$v 1995-1

in source: 94/1
(year is serving as volume number)

4XX \$a _____ ; \$v 94/1

Parallel Titles and Numbers

LC/PCC practice: If parallel titles are being recorded and the numbering also appears in more than one language or script, record each number after the title proper/parallel title to which it relates. If the number appears only once, record it after the title it linguistically matches or after the last title if it matches all, more than one, or none of the titles.

4XX \$a Veröffentlichungen mittelalterlicher
Musikhandschriften ; \$v Nr. 20 = \$a Publications
of mediaeval musical manuscripts ; \$v no. 20

- 4XX \$a Tutkimuksia ; \$v n:o 56 = \$a Undersökningar =
\$a Studies
- 4XX \$a Carte / Commission géologique du Canada = \$a Map
/ Geological Survey of Canada ; \$v 1665A

Editions with Identical Series Numbering

When a revised edition of an existing work or an edition of an existing work (e.g., translation) is issued by the same publisher in the same series, the publisher may assign a new series number or the original series number to the revision, translation, etc. In the latter case, proceed as if no duplication of numbering exists.

Inferred Numbering

If the item being cataloged lacks a number but the other volumes in the series given in the publisher's listing have numbers, generally infer that the volume being cataloged is the next number in the series; record that number in the series statement in brackets. In case of doubt, consider the item to be unnumbered.

Numbering Present Only in Cataloging Data/Bibliography

If the series numbering appears only in cataloging data (foreign or domestic) in the item or in a bibliography, do not transcribe this information in the series statement.

Numbering of and within a Specific Activity, Event

LC/PCC practice: Do not include the numbering of the activity, event, etc., in subfield \$v with the volume numbering relating to the sequencing of the publications from that activity, event, etc. Record the numbering of the activity, event, etc., as part of the series title if it appears as part of the title on the item; if the numbering of the activity, event, etc., is included in the statement of responsibility for the series on the item, record it as part of the statement of responsibility in the series area if recording that data element.

- 4XX \$a Atti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia
dell'arte ; \$v 7
- 4XX \$a Mis. doc / 49th Congress, 1st Session, Senate
; \$v no. 82

(*PCC practice:* See LCRI 21.30L for specific instructions about added entries for U.S. congressional publications.)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

1.6G1. NUMBERING.

PCC practice: In determining if there is a new sequence of numbering not accompanied by wording such as "new series," consult the national authority file for a series authority record for the series. If there is a series authority record for the series and it shows the same publisher and/or issuing body, assume that there is a new sequence of numbering; supply information in the numbering for the series in the bibliographic record and update the series authority record numbering information. If there is a different publisher and/or issuing body and there are no other indications (publisher's listing of earlier volumes in the series, specific statement from publisher, etc.) that the series has a new sequence of numbering, assume that the series is new. Do not change any existing bibliographic and series authority records created before Dec. 1, 2002.

*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

1.6G2. NUMBERING FOR MULTIPART ITEMS.

LC practice: When a multipart item itself is in a series and the multipart item is classified as a collection, record the numbering of the series in the collected set record according to the following guidelines until the multipart item is complete:

1) Record the series numbering for the first or last volume as permanent data, i.e., not within angle brackets:

2) Record all the series numbering as permanent data when the first or last volume is in hand with other consecutive volumes of the multipart item and the series numbering is scattered:

3) In all other situations, record the series numbering as temporary data, i.e., within angle brackets:

Use a hyphen to separate consecutive numbers and a comma to separate scattered numbers. When the multipart item is complete, show all numbering as permanent data.

First or last volume of multipart item being cataloged

no other volumes

245 \$a Multipart item title
 300 \$a v. <1>
 4XX \$a _____; \$v v. 13
 (v. 1 of multipart item is v. 13 of series)

245 \$a Multipart item title
 300 \$a v. < 5>
 4XX \$a _____; \$v no. 22
 (v. 5 of multipart item is no. 22 of series)

other volumes and series numbering consecutive

245 \$a Multipart item title
 300 \$a v. <1=2>
 4XX \$a _____; \$v no. 3=<4>
 (v. 1 2 of multipart item are no. 3 4 of series)

other volumes and series numbering scattered

245 \$a Multipart item title
 300 \$a v. <1=3>
 4XX \$a _____; \$v v. 5, 7, 10
 (v. 1 3 of multipart item are v. 5, 7, 10 of series)

1.6G2

245 \$a Multipart item title
300 \$a v. <1, 3 >
4XX \$a _____; \$v no. 24, <30 >
(v. 1, 3 of multipart item are no. 24, 30 of series)

~~Volumes other than first or last volume of multipart item being cataloged~~

~~only one volume in hand:~~

245 \$a Multipart item title
300 \$a v. <2 >
4XX \$a _____; \$v no. <18 >
(v. 2 of multipart item is no. 18 of series)

~~more than one volume in hand and series numbering consecutive:~~

245 \$a Multipart item title
300 \$a v. <2-4 >
4XX \$a _____; \$v no. <9-11 >
(v. 2-4 of multipart item are no. 9-11 of series)

~~more than one volume in hand and series numbering scattered:~~

245 \$a Multipart item title
300 \$a v. <2, 4 >
4XX \$a _____; \$v no. <31, 42 >
(v. 2, 4 of multipart item are no. 31, 42 of series)

**This LCRI is being deleted; it is covered by
LCRI 1.0C**

1.6H. SUBSERIES

Applicability

Apply the rules for subseries (based on 12.1B4-12.1B5) if

- 1) the item has an analyzable title (cf. AACR2 13.3); *and*
- 2) the item also bears at least two other titles that it shares with other items and those two titles are related: one title, the main series, is more comprehensive in scope or subject matter; the other title, the subseries, is more specific; *and*
- 3) *LC/PCC practice*: both the main series title and the subseries title appear in the same prescribed source for the series area in the appropriate AACR2 chapter; proximity in the same source is not a factor. If the main series and subseries do not appear in the same source, record each title in its own series statement (cf. AACR2 1.6J). For atlases and materials cataloged according to chapters 2, 5, and 12, the source should be one of the preliminaries, the publisher's listing, or the colophon.

Additional Guidelines

When evaluating the titles shared with other items, consider the following:

- 1) If the titles represent resources with different modes of issuance (e.g., one title is a multipart item and the other is a serial), treat each as a separate series.
- 2) If both titles are multipart items, apply LCRI 25.6A to determine if the two titles are to be treated as one entity or as two entities. *

Access Points for Main Series and Subseries

PCC practice: See AACR2 rule 21.30L and LCRI 21.30L for information about access points for main series and subseries. *

Changes Affecting Heading for Subseries

PCC practice *

1) *Omission/addition of main series*. If the subseries is entered indirectly, i.e., under a main series and that main series is not present on later issues, generally create a new heading. Also, if the subseries is entered directly and the main series is present on later issues, generally create a new heading. If the presence/absence of the main series continues to be inconsistent, do not continue to make new headings; use the latest heading and add information/reference for the other form.

2) *Change in title of subseries*. If there is no change in the title of the main series but a change occurs in the title of the subseries that is entered indirectly, apply the criteria of AACR2 21.2C and LCRI 21.2C to the whole title proper (main series and subseries).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

1.6J. MORE THAN ONE SERIES STATEMENT

If some parts or issues of a multipart item or serial are published in one series and other parts/issues are published in another series, precede each series title with an indication of the particular parts or issues to which that series title applies. If a series has changed its title (cf. AACR2 21.2C and its LCRI), treat each title as a separate series. Separate the indication of the particular parts from the series title with a colon-space.

- 300 \$a 5 v. ; \$c 14 cm.
 4XX \$a v. 1, 3-5: Music bibliographies ; \$v 12, 15, 21-22
 4XX \$a v. 2: Baroque musical studies ; \$v 2
(Volumes of multipart item are in different series)
- 300 \$a 10 v. : \$b ill. ; \$c 28 cm.
 4XX \$a v. 1-8: Anthropological monographs ; \$v no. 23-30
 4XX \$a v. 9-10: Art and anthropological monographs ;
 \$v no. 31-32
(Title of series changed with no. 31)
- 300 \$a v. ; \$c 28 cm.
 4XX \$a 1969-1979: DHEW publication
 4XX \$a 1980- : DHHS publication
(Title of series changed. Series statement is on a bibliographic record for a serial; numbering of volumes in series is not included)

If all the parts or issues appear in one series and some of the parts or issues appear also in another series, precede the second series title with an indication of the particular parts or issues applicable to that title.

- 300 \$a 3 v. ; \$c 20 cm.
 4XX \$a Testi del Risorgimento ; \$v 4-6
 4XX \$a v. 2: Saggi e documentazioni ; \$v 17

*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

2.5B9. LEAVES OR PAGES OF PLATES.

LC practice: Give the number of leaves or pages of plates after the paging if the leaves or pages of plates are numbered. If the leaves or pages of plates are unnumbered, give the number only when the plates clearly represent an important feature of the book. Otherwise, generally do not count unnumbered leaves or pages of plates.

In records created by other agencies or libraries, generally accept the information already in the record unless it is obviously wrong.

*
*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

2.5C2. ILLUSTRATIVE MATTER.

Option Decision

LC practice: Describe an illustrated printed monograph or serial as "ill." in all cases unless there are maps present or 2.5C5 is applicable.

In records created by other agencies or libraries, generally accept the information already in the record unless it is obviously wrong.

*
*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

12.0. GENERAL RULES.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Serials Issued in Cumulations**Serials Issued in Parts****Reprinted Issues of Non-Newspaper Serials****Newspapers****Loose-Leaf Services**

- 1) Pamphlets/paperbacks
- 2) Sections with independent numeric or chronological designations
- 3) Transfer volumes

Change in Issuance**Modifying Pre-December 2002 Records for Updating Loose-leafs****Serials Issued in Cumulations**

Some serials issued in cumulations have a publication pattern whereby the individual issues for a certain period are rearranged, corrected, and perhaps expanded and reissued as a cumulation that may or may not have the same title as the individual issues. The contents of the individual issues and the cumulation are basically the same. However, these cumulations should not be confused with other serials that are publications with different frequencies and entirely different contents although the titles may be the same, e.g., an annual publication that gives the total figures for the year but does not include the monthly figures that appeared in the individual monthly issues. Separate records are generally made for these latter publications unless the numbering system ties them together.

Below are some criteria that can be used to determine when separate records should be made for such cumulations.

- 1) Separate records are generally made if

a) the individual issues and the cumulation have the same title but have different numbering systems, e.g., the individual issues have numeric designations but the cumulation has only a chronological designation.

```
245 00 $a Law book guide.
362 0# $a Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1973)-
      (Monthly, except July and August)
```

```
245 00 $a Law book guide.
362 0# $a 1973-
      (Annual)
```

12.0

b) the individual issues and the cumulation have different titles and separate numbering systems.

245 00 \$a Index medicus.
362 0# \$a New ser., v. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1960)-
(Monthly)

245 00 \$a Cumulated Index medicus.
362 0# \$a Vol. 1 (1960)-
(Annual)

2) Separate records are generally *not* made if

a) the individual issues and the cumulation have a continuous numbering system; the cumulation may or may not have a different title.

245 00 \$a International nursing index.
362 0# \$a Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1966)-
(Quarterly; the first three issues called v. 1, no. 1-3; the fourth issue, an annual cumulation, called v. 1, no. 4)

130 0# \$a Quarterly economic review (European Bank for Reconstruction and Development
245 00 \$a Quarterly economic review / \$c European Bank for Reconstruction and Development.
246 1# \$i Year-end issue replaced by: \$a Annual economic review
310 ## \$a Quarterly
362 0# \$a June 1992-

b) the individual issues and the cumulation have the same title, have only chronological designations, and the cumulation is published in lieu of the last individual issue.

110 2# \$a Library of Congress.
245 10 \$a Library of Congress name headings with references.
362 0# \$a Jan./Mar. 1974-
(Quarterly; the first three issues called Jan./Mar. 1974-July/Sept. 1974; the fourth issue, an annual cumulation, called 1974)

3) Whenever in doubt, prefer separate records.

Serials Issued in Parts

For serials issued in parts, the criteria listed below can be used to determine when separate records are made and when they are not.

1) Separate records are generally made if

a) the individual parts are unnumbered or otherwise undesignated as parts of one serial.

```
110 2# $a Singapore Airlines.
245 10 $a Annual report. $p Operating review.
```

```
110 2# $a Singapore Airlines
245 10 $a Annual report. $p Financial report
      (The operating review and the financial report
       are two parts that make up the airline's
       annual report)
```

b) the individual parts have their own numbering system.

```
245 00 $a Chemical abstracts. $p Chemical substance
      index.
```

```
362 0# $a 101 CS1 (Jan.-June 1984)-
```

```
245 00 $a Chemical abstracts. $p Formula index.
```

```
362 0# $a 101 F1 (July-Dec. 1984)-
```

```
245 00 $a Journal of polymer science. $n Part A, $p
      General papers.
```

```
362 0# $a Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1963)-
```

```
245 00 $a Journal of polymer science. $n Part B, $p
      Polymer letters.
```

```
362 0# $a Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1963)-
```

c) the parts can be purchased separately.

2) Separate records are generally *not* made if

a) the individual parts do not have a numbering system that relates to the serial as a whole.

245 00 \$a U.S. physicians reference listing.
362 0# \$a 1974-

*(Each directory is published in ten volumes
and a reference volume and numbered v. 1-
11)*

245 00 \$a Who's who in computers and data processing.
362 0# \$a 1971-

*(Issued in three volumes: v. 1, Systems
analysts and programmers; v. 2, Data
processing managers and directors; v. 3, Other
computer professionals)*

b) the parts have a continuous pagination or enumeration.

245 00 \$a Journal of the Indian Institute of Science.

*(Issued in three sections: Section A = Vol. 59,
no. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9; Section B = Vol. 59, no. 2, 6,
10; Section C = Vol. 59, no. 4, 8, 12)*

245 00 \$a Inorganica chimica acta.

*(Issued in three sections: Articles and letters =
Vols. 96-105; Bioinorganic chemistry articles
and letters = Vols. 106-108; F-block elements
articles and letters = Vols. 109-110)*

c) the parts cannot be purchased separately.

d) the parts appear to be designed to be used together.

3) Whenever in doubt, prefer separate records.

Reprinted Issues of Non-Newspaper Serials

1) Separate records are generally made for reprinted serials if the reprinted issues are published by a publisher not responsible for the original.

2) Separate records are generally not made for reprinted serials if the serial issues are reprinted by the publisher of the original. If these issues carry a different or an additional title, add a note on the record for the original and provide an added entry.

246 1# \$i Some issues reprinted with title: \$a
Geography research forum

246 1# \$i Some vols. reissued with cover title: \$a
Amica news bulletins, \$f <1971-1983>

LC practice. When the Library of Congress acquires reprinted issues of a serial title to fill in gaps in its holdings of the original, a separate bibliographic record for the reprinted issue(s) will not be created.

See LCRI 1.0 for guidelines about cataloging a reprint of serial issues as a serial or as a monograph. See LCRI 12.0B1 for information about the basis of description for reprints of printed serials.

Newspapers

LC practice: LC's records for U.S. newspapers in microform follow the guidelines of the United States Newspaper Program (USNP). USNP is not required to follow the CONSER practice of creating separate records for U.S. titles in microform, but generally uses the "master record convention" to account for the various physical forms in which a newspaper is held. The bibliographic record describes the newspaper as it was originally published. The physical format, whether original newsprint, microform, or reprint, is described in the Copy Field of the OCLC local data record.

Because the USNP record provides a description only for the newspaper as originally published, 533 fields are not included in the bibliographic record. To fulfill one aspect of its national role, LC will add any important access points related only to a microform to the USNP record justified by a 500 note (because 533 fields are not included). The most likely access point will be the title of the series (830 field) in which the microform is published. The 500 note will be a general one (e.g., "Microform produced by _____ published in series: _____"); the span of holdings in that series will not be given.

Loose-Leaf Services

A loose-leaf service is a publication issued in several component parts, often in a combination of updating loose-leaf and bound volumes containing both primary and secondary source material. Sometimes a loose-leaf service is called a reporter.

LC/PCC practice: Generally, create only one bibliographic record for the service as a whole; consider the service as a whole to be an integrating resource. In a note, list the component parts in enough detail to identify them. Give any volume designation that is found on a part. Optionally, include numeric or chronological designations of newsletters, bulletins, etc., within the service.

```
500 ## $a The reporter contains binders: Current
developments; Monographs; State solid waste--
Land use; Federal laws; Federal regulations;
State water laws; State air laws; Mining;
Decisions (later published in bound volumes as
Environment reporter. Cases).
```

500 ## \$a The service is divided into five parts:
Treatise / by Jacob Mertens, Jr., and others
(v., loose-leaf); Code, current volume (loose-
leaf) and bound volumes, 1954-1958-; Code
commentary (v., loose-leaf); Regulations,
current volume (loose-leaf) and bound volumes,
1954-1960- ; Rulings, current volume (loose-
leaf) and bound volumes, 1954-1957-

If a component is lacking, give such information in a note.

500 ## \$a Library of Congress lacks section: Mining. \$5
DLC

If, by exception, separate records are being created for the component parts, identify each part as an updating loose-leaf, multipart item, etc., and catalog it accordingly. In a note, indicate the relationship to the parent loose-leaf service and give a related work added entry for the loose-leaf service.

1) *Pamphlets/paperbacks*

Current information of temporary or permanent value may be published also in pamphlet or paperback form and be distributed to subscribers of a loose-leaf service as part of the subscription. Such publications are keyed to a section or a service or to several services. In addition to individual, distinctive titles, they carry also the title of the service and the numbering of a section of the service (usually a supplementary bulletin, to which is added a further distinguishing characteristic such as the words "Extra," "Section 2," etc. (e.g., "Bulletin 35, Extra" or "Report bulletin 24, Volume LIII (Section 2)").

LC/PCC practice: Although these publications are often indexed in the service, they are unsuitable for filing into the service. If such a publication is considered of permanent value, create a separate record. Because a pamphlet or paperback may be distributed to more than one service, do not include a note in the bibliographic record indicating a relationship to the loose-leaf service and do not give an added entry for the service.

At first, these publications may appear to be volumes in a monographic series because there is a comprehensive title (the title of the loose-leaf service), a type of numbering, and a volume title.

* *PCC practice:* To avoid confusion, create a series-like phrase series authority record; use the titles of the service and of the section of the service in the heading and give instructions for handling the materials in a note.

series authority record

130 #0 \$a Tax ideas. \$p Bulletin
 667 ## \$a A separately numbered section of the loose-leaf service "Tax ideas." Bulletins issued in loose-leaf format are filed as a section of the parent loose-leaf. Catalog separately any material published in pamphlet or paperback form that carries the additional designation "Section 2;" do not indicate a relationship to the parent loose-leaf and do not give an added entry for the parent loose-leaf.

2) *Sections with independent numeric or chronological designations: bulletins, newsletters, etc.*

Latest developments in a particular field are often reported and analyzed in special sections of a loose-leaf. These sections are typically called Bulletin, Newsletter, Report bulletin, Report, etc., and are for the most part indexed in the loose-leaf. They carry a numeric or chronological designation of their own. Information of permanent value from these sections is often later included in the main text and old issues can be periodically discarded or transferred.

LC/PCC practice: Do not create a separate record for such a section. Instead, on the bibliographic record for the updating loose-leaf, give a note explaining the inclusion of any separately numbered and separately titled section. Give an appropriate added entry for the section.

500 ## \$a Includes separately numbered section: Report bulletin.

500 ## \$a Includes separately numbered bulletin: Criminal law advocacy reporter.

3) *Transfer volumes*

A transfer volume is a bibliographic unit containing material of a permanent nature originally issued as a section or binder of a loose-leaf service. The material is transferred from the loose-leaf mode by one of the following methods: the material is reissued by the publisher in bound form and sent to the subscriber as part of a subscription or made available for separate purchase; the material is transferred from the original loose-leaf mode to permanent binders (sometimes supplied by the publisher) or bound separately by the subscriber.

LC/PCC practice: Generally, do not create a separate bibliographic record for the transfer material. Instead, on the bibliographic record for the updating loose-leaf, give a note explaining the inclusion of transfer material of permanent value. If the transfer section has a title of its own or acquires a title of its own in its transferred/bound stage, cite the title in the note and give an added entry.

12.0

500 ## \$a Material of permanent value is removed periodically and bound in separate volume.

500 ## \$a Material of permanent value is transferred from time to time to storage binders.

500 ## \$a Prebound, separately numbered volumes with title Administrative law decisions, containing reports of decisions of the Administrative Appeals Tribunal, periodically replace the reports and decisions in the section entitled Administrative law decisions.

If a separate bibliographic record is created for the transfer material, include a note explaining the relationship to the updating loose-leaf.

245 00 \$a Environment reporter. \$p Cases.

500 ## \$a These volumes replace the opinions published in loose-leaf format in the "Decisions" binder of Environment reporter.

Change in Issuance

For LC practice when a monograph or serial becomes an integrating resource, an integrating resource becomes a serial, etc., see LCRI 1.0.

Modifying Pre-December 2002 Records for Updating Loose-leafs

LC practice:

The extent to which modifications due to changes should be made in records for updating loose-leafs created before LC's implementation of the 2002 Revision of AACR2 on Dec. 1, 2002, depends upon LC's decision on filing updates into those bibliographic resources.

* If LC doesn't file updates and if the main entry and/or title proper changes on a current
* iteration, change the description and give a note and added entry for the earlier main entry and/or title
* proper. This modification of the bibliographic record is necessary to ensure identification of the
* resource in the future. If other data elements change, do not modify the bibliographic record.
*

If LC does file updates, change the description to reflect the latest iteration according to the rules in chapter 12. Give notes and added entries for changes if considered important. Insure that all name and series headings are in AACR2 form and are represented by authority records. Change the record as appropriate to follow current MARC 21 practice.

12.6B1. SERIES STATEMENTS.

Serials: In Numbered Series

Record the number of the series in the series statement in the three situations listed below. *PCC practice*: Include the number in the series added entry for the first and second situations; see the specific instruction for the third situation. Examples illustrate PCC practice.

- 1) a single issue of a serial is in a series;

```
490 1# $a v. 1: Contributions in seismology ; $v no. 13
830 #0 $a Contributions in seismology ; $v no. 13.
```

- 2) a known span of issues of a serial is in a span of consecutive numbers of a series;

```
490 1# $a v. 1-4: Smithsonian miscellaneous collections
; $v v. 19-22
830 #0 $a Smithsonian miscellaneous collections ; $v v.
19-22.
```

3) all issues of the serial in the series carry the same number of the series. If part of the series number is the same on all issues of the serial, record only that part. *PCC practice*: include that part in the added entry for the series.

```
490 1# $a 1970-1982: KBL bulletin ; $v 101-2
830 #0 $a KBL bulletin ;$v 101-2.

440 #0 $a DHEW publication ; $v no. (NCES)
```

Serial Record for Subseries in Numbered Main Series

When a serial bibliographic record is created for a subseries in a numbered main series, also give the main series in the series area.

```
245 00 $a Research papers in psychology. $p Behavior
modification studies
4XX $a Research papers in psychology
```

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

13.3. ANALYSIS OF MONOGRAPHIC SERIES AND MULTIPART MONOGRAPHS.

LC practice:

LC has announced a change in policy applying to all bibliographic resources (monographs, serials, and integrating resources) in series. As of June 1, 2006, LC analyzes and classifies separately all parts of monographic series and of multipart monographs with the exception of those categories listed at the end of this LCRI. As of the same date, LC does not give “controlled” access points for series in new LC original cataloging (CIP and non-CIP) bibliographic records, does not update series access points in existing bibliographic records, and does not consult, make, or update series authority records. (Exception for consulting SARS: see LCRI 25.5B for determining “conflict.”) LC will “pass through” the series information already in bibliographic records used by LC as copy (CIP/LC partner records, PCC records, and non-PCC (including Casalini) records).

PCC practice:

The PCC Policy Committee has announced that the PCC series policy remains unchanged.

Monographic Series

When a publication in a monographic series that is analyzed in full lacks a title other than that of the comprehensive title or has a title that is dependent on the comprehensive title, prepare a separate bibliographic record for that part, regardless of whether the part is numbered or not. Apply the following when preparing the record.

- 1) Transcribe the comprehensive title as the common title of the analytic.
- 2) If there is numbering only, transcribe the numbering as the section title; if there is numbering and also a dependent title, transcribe the numbering as enumeration (cf. 12.1B6) and the dependent title as the section title; if there is a dependent title but no numbering, transcribe the dependent title as the section title.
- 3) Do not formulate a series statement for the analytic record.

245 10 \$a Studies in gypsy lore. \$n Volume 25

245 10 \$a Studies in 19th century French literature. \$n
Volume 57, \$p Paris / \$c edited ...

Multipart Monographs

1) *Classified separately.* When a part of a multipart monograph that is classified separately lacks a title other than that of the comprehensive title or has a title that is dependent on the comprehensive title, prepare a separate bibliographic record for that part, regardless of whether the part is numbered or not. Apply the following when preparing the record:

13.3

a) Transcribe the comprehensive title as the common title of the analytic.

b) If there is numbering only, transcribe the numbering as the section title; if there is numbering and also a dependent title, transcribe the numbering as enumeration or alphabetic designation and the dependent title as the section title; if there is a dependent title but no numbering, transcribe the dependent title as the section title.

* c) Do not formulate a series statement for the analytic record.

245 10 \$a Recent trends in elementary education. \$n
Volume 1, \$p Introduction

*

(1) *Mixture of independent and dependent titles.* If a multipart monograph consists of parts whose individual titles are a mixture, i.e., some are independent of the comprehensive title and some are dependent on it, prepare a series authority record and use a regular series statement in the records of the analytics with *independent* titles.

The art of sewing
(*An unnumbered multipart item*)
Basic tailoring
(*Title of analytic*)

*

*

245 00 \$a Basic tailoring / \$c ...
300 ## \$a 203 p. ; 26 cm.
490 0# \$a The art of sewing

*

For the analytics with *dependent* titles, use the technique described in 1) above, i.e., do not use a series statement on the record for the analytic.

The sporting scene
(*Title of analytic*)

130 #0 \$a Art of sewing. \$p Sporting scene
245 14 \$a The art of sewing. \$p The sporting scene / \$c
...
300 ## \$a 203 p. ; \$c 26 cm.

*

(2) *All titles dependent titles: unnumbered.* If all the titles of the parts are dependent on the comprehensive title and the multipart monograph is unnumbered, for the analytics transcribe the comprehensive title as the common title and the title of the part as a section title. Do not prepare a series authority record.

100 1# \$a Bates, James D.
245 10 \$a Minnesota legal forms. \$p Probate / \$c ...

100 1# \$a Roer, Kathleen M.
 245 10 \$a Minnesota legal forms. \$p Residential real
 estate / \$c ...

Exceptions to the LC Series Policy to Analyze in Full and Classify Separately

A. The following categories will *not be analyzed* and will be *classed as a collection*; series authority records will not be consulted, created, or updated:

1. Numbered multipart monographs with all parts lacking analyzable titles
2. Unnumbered multipart monographs cataloged per “2A cataloging” guidelines (“2A cataloging” is a local LC practice to create a made-up collected set record for an unnumbered multipart monograph, assigning numbers to parts as received)
3. Auction and sales catalogs
4. Legal multipart monographs identified by LC’s Law Library
5. Numbered monographic series already assigned these treatment decisions prior to June 1, 2006 (issues identified by presence of check-in records in acquisitions units)

B. The following category will *not be analyzed* and *will not be classified*; series authority records will not be consulted, created, or updated:

1. Technical report series identified by LC’s Science, Technology, and Business Division or LC’s Asian Division and shelved in those divisions

C. The following categories will be *analyzed in full* but will be *classed as a collection*; series authority records will not be consulted, created, or updated:

- M2
 Division
 Library
1. Scholarly collections of music historical sources eligible to be classed together in
 2. “Web access to monographic series” project in LC’s Social Sciences Cataloging
 3. Microform sets
 4. Proceedings of a single conference published in more than one volume with analyzable volume titles
 5. Legal monographic series and multipart monographs identified by LC’s Law

D. The following category will be *analyzed in full: applies to analyzable parts* and will be *classed as a collection*; series authority records will not be consulted, created, or updated.

1. Complete editions of collected works of individual composers (classed in M3)

13.3

* Prepare separate bibliographic records only¹ for parts that meet one of the following
* criteria (applying the definition of musical work in 25.25A, footnote 9):
*

* a) A single part (in one or more physical volumes) contains a single musical
* work or a single excerpt from a work.

* b) A single part (in one or more physical volumes) contains two musical
* works or two excerpts from one or two works.
*

* E. Existing LC shelflist records missing in LC's database now being input to the database:
* the records will reflect the existing series decisions (i.e., presence or absence of controlled series
* access point; a classed-separately or a classed-as-a-collection call number) at the time the resource
* was cataloged originally.

* ¹The purpose of this restriction is to avoid analytic bibliographic records for parts of such sets
* that would themselves receive collective uniform titles under 25.34B or 25.34C.

21.2A1. CHANGES IN TITLES PROPER. MULTIPART MONOGRAPHS.

Change in LC/PCC policy: There should be only one record for an unnumbered multipart item. Prior to Dec. 1, 2002, separate series authority records were made for an unnumbered multipart item when the title proper changed; do not change or condense any records created before Dec. 1, 2002. (The LC/PCC policy has always been to have only one record for a numbered multipart item when the title proper changed.)

LC/PCC practice: Follow rule 1.0A2 and always use the first part if possible as the basis of the description for the collected set bibliographic record. *PCC practice:* The same guideline applies to the heading in the series authority record. If that is not possible, use the first part that is available; in the collected set bibliographic record, make a “Description based on” note (see rule 1.7B23 and its LCRI).

*
*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

21.2C. CHANGES IN TITLES PROPER. SERIALS.

LC/PCC practice

Apply this rule and LCRI only to serials (including monographic series) and to series-like phrases.

General guidelines

1) When determining if there has been a major change or a minor change on a subsequent issue or part, compare the title on that issue or part to the title proper recorded in the title and statement of responsibility area in the serial bibliographic record. *PCC practice*: When deciding to update an existing or create a new series authority record, compare the title on that issue or part to the title proper recorded in the heading of the series authority record for a monographic series or other serial.

2) Multiple minor changes in the title do not equal a major change.

In applying category b)i) of 21.2C2b, consider that “one spelling vs. another” applies both in the case of ordinary orthographic variations and in the case of official orthographic changes. Consider that “a change in grammatical form” includes singular vs. plural, adjective vs. noun, and genitive vs. nominative.

In applying category b)iii), if the change is in the name of a body that is part of the title proper and the change requires the creation of a new heading for the body (cf. 24.1C), consider such a change to be a major change. Consider the presence or absence of the name or title of the official of the body to be a minor change. Consider the presence or absence of the body to whom a publication is presented to be a minor change.

For category b)v), also consider the situation to apply when the title is given in more than one script. Do not consider there to be a major change if the addition of the title in another language or script on a later issue would affect the choice of title proper if the description were based on that issue.

For category b)vii), also consider the situation to apply when the language of the title varies according to the language of the text.

For categories b)v) and b)vii), consider that there has been a major change if there is evidence that the publisher intentionally changed the title; such evidence may include, for example, a statement by the publisher or a new ISSN printed on the publication.

In applying category b)viii), consider that “a list” means at least three terms.

In applying category b)ix), note that the change from one word to another (e.g., the change from “magazine” to “journal”) is a major change. The word “series” does indicate a type of resource. A word denoting frequency (e.g., “monthly”) does not indicate a type of resource.

21.2C

Exceptions

1) *Session Laws of the U.S. States. LC/PCC practice:* Consider all changes in the title proper to be minor changes and do not create new entries (cf. LCRI 25.15A1).

2) *17th-19th Century U.S. almanacs. LC practice:* Generally, consider all changes in the title proper to be minor changes and do not create new entries.

21.3A2. CHANGES OF PERSONS OR BODIES RESPONSIBLE FOR A WORK.
MONOGRAPHS.

Change in LC/PCC policy: There should be only one record for an unnumbered multipart item. Prior to Dec. 1, 2002, separate series authority records were made for an unnumbered multipart item when the responsible person or body changed; do not change or condense any records created before Dec. 1, 2002. (The LC/PCC policy has always been to have only one record for a numbered multipart item when the responsible person or body changed.)

LC/PCC practice: Follow rule 1.0A2 and always use the first part if possible as the basis of the description for the collected set bibliographic record. *PCC practice:* The same guideline applies to the heading in the series authority record. If that is not possible, use the first part that is available; in the collected set bibliographic record, make a “Description based on” note (see rule 1.7B23 and its LCRI).

*
*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

21.29. GENERAL RULE.**Order of Added Entries**

Give added entries in the following order:

- 1) Personal name;
- 2) Personal name/title;
- 3) Corporate name;
- 4) Corporate name/title;
- 5) Uniform title (all instances of works entered under title);
- 6) Other. *

For arrangement within any one grouping, generally follow the order in which the justifying data appear in the bibliographic description. If such a criterion is not applicable, use judgment.

General Material Designations

Although a general material designation (GMD) is given in the title and statement of responsibility area (LCRI 1.1C), do not use a GMD in added entries, including added entries for titles (246, 247, and 740 fields) and related works. *

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

21.30G. RELATED WORKS

General

Use the AACR2 form for the related work. When formulating the added entry, follow the provisions for “simple” added entries given in LCRI 21.30M. (Note: an explanation of the two types of added entries for works, related and analytical, is given in LCRI 21.30M.)

LC practice when the added entry is for a serial related work: Use in the added entry the established AACR2 form for the serial from an AACR2 bibliographic or authority record in the LC database. If such a record is lacking, search OCLC or RLIN for a CONSER AACR2 record. If there is no CONSER record, formulate the added entry according to the appropriate AACR2 rule for the choice of main entry, form of heading, and form of the title proper (or the uniform title); create a name authority record.

LC practice when the added entry is for a monographic related work: Use in the added entry the established AACR2 form for the monograph from an AACR2 bibliographic or authority record in the LC database. If such a record is lacking, formulate the added entry according to the appropriate AACR2 rule for the choice of main entry, form of heading, and form of the title proper (or the uniform title); create a name authority record.

PCC practice: Use in the added entry the established AACR2 form from a CONSER serial record, a monograph record, or an authority record. If such a record is lacking, formulate the added entry according to the appropriate AACR2 rule for the choice of main entry, form of heading, and form of the title proper (or the uniform title); create a name authority record.

Selected Issues of Periodicals Published Separately

When cataloging a separately published issue of a periodical (cf. LCRI 1.6), make a related work added entry for the periodical itself.

```
730 0# $a Cataloging & classification quarterly.
```

Unnumbered Supplement or Special Number to a Serial

When cataloging an unnumbered supplement or special number to a serial, make a related work added entry for the serial itself. It is not a series added entry because the unnumbered supplement or special number is not considered to be a series (cf. LCRI 1.6).

1) For a special number, formulate an added entry consisting of the name of the serial and, in subfield \$p, "Special number" in English.

```
730 0# $a Malaysian journal of tropical geography. ‡p
Special number.
```

2) If the supplement relates to the serial as a whole, formulate an added entry consisting of the name of the serial and, in subfield \$p, "Supplement" in English.

21.30G

730 \$a Annuario statistico italiano. \$p Supplement.

3) If the supplement relates to a particular issue of a serial, formulate an added entry consisting of the name of the serial and, in subfield \$n, both the number of the issue and the qualifier "(Supplement)" in English.

730 0# \$a Musica jazz. \$n 1985, n. 7 (Supplement).
730 0# †\$ Actualités-Service. \$n No 306 (Supplement).
730 0# \$a Bulletin (Association française pour l'étude
du quaternaire). \$n No 50 (Supplement).
730 0# \$a Mondo. \$n N. 33 (Supplement).
730 0# \$a Regione Trentino-Alto Adige. \$n N. 8, 1976
(Supplement).

*

Note. A supplement that is numbered only in relation to a particular number of a serial (e.g., supplements 1 and 2 to v. 10, no. 1 of the serial) is considered to be unnumbered since there isn't a separate numbering system for that supplement.

LC practice: For such a supplement numbered in relation to the number of the serial, formulate the added entry as described above but include the number in the qualification.

730 0# \$a Actualités-Service. \$n No 306 (Supplement 1).
730 0# \$a Actualités-Service. \$n No 306 (Supplement 2).

Musical works

When an instrumental work or collection is based on, inspired by, etc., one or two individual literary works, make a simple added entry or entries (cf. LCRI 21.30M) for the literary work or works. (For vocal works based on literary works, see 21.19A.)

100 1# \$a Tchaikovsky, Peter Ilich, \$d 1840-1893.
240 10 \$a Romeo et Juliette (Fantasy-overture)
245 10 \$a Romeo und Julia : \$b Fantasie-Ouvertüre nach
Shakespeare ...
700 1# \$a Shakespeare, William, \$d 1564-1616. \$t Romeo
and Juliet.

When an instrumental or vocal work or collection is based on, inspired by, etc., one or two individual art works, make a simple added entry or entries for the art work or works.

100 1# \$a Pujol, Maximo Diego, \$d 1957-
245 10 \$a Guernica : \$b d'après l'œuvre de Pablo Picasso
...
700 1# \$a Picasso, Pablo, \$d 1881-1973. \$t Guernica.

When an instrumental or vocal work or collection is based on, inspired by, etc., three or more

works by the same author or artist, or an author's or artist's oeuvre in general, make an added entry for the author or artist.

```
100 1# $a Henze, Hans Werner, $d 1926-
240 10 $a Royal winter music. $n No. 1
245 10 $a Royal winter music. $p First sonata on
        Shakespearean characters ...
700 1# $a Shakespeare, William, $d 1564-1616.

100 1# $a Mussorgsky, Modest Petrovich, $d 1839-1881.
240 10 $a Kartinki s vystavki
245 10 $a Pictures at an exhibition ...
500 ## $a Suite, based on paintings and drawings by
        Victor Hartmann.
700 1# $a Gartman, Viktor Aleksandrovich, $d 1834-1873.
```

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

21.30L. SERIES.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Series Added Entry Guidelines

Option Decision *

Form of Series Added Entries

Multipart Item in a Series

Integrating Resource in One or More Series

Republications

Numbering Grammatically Integrated with Series Title

More Than One System of Numbering

Numbering Errors

Number Preceded by One or More Letters

Numbering for Publications of the U.S. Congress

Main Series and Indirectly Entered Subseries

- 1) Main series is unnumbered
- 2) Main series is numbered
- 3) Hierarchy of numbered and unnumbered main series/subseries

Single Series Statement Encompassing More Than One Series

One or Several Series Headings *

Series Added Entry Guidelines (For PCC libraries only – the Library of Congress will no longer provide controlled series access) *

LC practice: *

LC has announced a change in policy applying to all bibliographic resources (monographs, serials, and integrating resources) in series. As of June 1, 2006, LC analyzes and classifies separately all parts of monographic series and of multipart monographs with the exception of *

21.30L

* those categories listed in LCRI 13.3. As of the same date, LC does not give “controlled” access
* points for series in new LC original cataloging (CIP and non-CIP) bibliographic records, does not
* update series access points in existing bibliographic records, and does not consult, make, or
* update series authority records. LC will “pass through” the series information already in
* bibliographic records used by LC as copy (CIP/LC partner records, PCC records, and non-PCC
* (including Casalini) records).

* *PCC practice:*

* The PCC Policy Committee has announced that the PCC series policy remains unchanged.
* The remainder of this LCRI applies to PCC libraries.

All the material in the remainder of this LCRI assumes the series decision recorded on the series authority record is to "trace" the series.

* Unless a specific category is mentioned, the term "series" in this LCRI means any of these comprehensive items: monographic series, other serial, multipart item, integrating resource.

See AACR2 rules for the series area (1.6 ff.) and related LCRIS for information about series statements.

Option Decision

* *LC practice:* Apply the optional provision for adding the numeric, etc., designation of the series in the series added entry. Give it in the form established in the series authority record.

Form of Series Added Entries

Although a series statement may include a parallel title (1.6C), other title information (1.6D), a statement of responsibility (1.6E), or an ISSN (1.6F), the heading for a series consists only of one of the following: a title proper, a uniform title heading, a name heading/title proper, or a name heading/uniform title.

There are two ways to accommodate series added entries in the MARC record:

1) derive a series added entry from the series statement: 440 field (Series statement/Added entry--Title);

2) record a series added entry in a field defined for that purpose: 8XX (Series added entries).

* Explicitly provide a series added entry (tag the 4XX field as 490 1 and add an 8XX field) if there is any difference between the series statement and the numbering (if the series is numbered) and the established form of the series heading and form of numbering on the series authority record.

Multipart Item in a Series

If the parts of a multipart item are separately numbered within a series, give the numbers in the series added entry as they are given in the series statement (cf. LCRI 1.6G2) and in the form established in the series authority record. It is no longer necessary to create an 8XX added entry solely because the numbering is not consecutive or the first number is not permanent; it is not necessary to change existing records that reflect the old practice until the record is closed. *

Integrating Resource in One or More Series

Also provide an 8XX series added entry for any traced series included in a note. (Series not present on the latest iteration will be given in the note area instead of in the series area — cf. rule 12.6B2 and 12.7B14.2b.) *

existing record

```
260 ## $a Chicago : $b CJ Press, $c 1983-
440 #0 $a Real estate professional series
```

same record updated later

```
260 ## $a Chicago : $b CJ Press, $c 1983-
no 4XX field
500 ## $a Series title, 1983-1995: Real estate
professional series.
500 ## $a Description based on: release 23, published
in Jan. 1996.
830 #0 $a Real estate professional series.
```

existing record

```
260 ## $a Denver : $b Smith Pub. Co.
440 #0 $a Research in library acquisitions
500 ## $a Description based on: update 2, published in
1991.
```

same record updated later

```
260 ## $a Denver : $b Smith Pub. Co.
490 1# $a Library acquisitions
500 ## $a Series title <1991 >: Research in library
acquisitions.
500 ## $a Description based on: update 9, published in
2000.
830 #0 $a Research in library acquisitions.
830 #0 $a Library acquisitions (Denver, Colo.)
```

21.30L

Republications

- * If a republication contains the original series statement (transcribed in parentheses in the bibliographic history note—cf. LCRI 2.7B7), provide an 8XX series added entry for the series. Do not give a series added entry if the original series statement is lacking on the item even if information about the series is recorded in the bibliographic history note.

Numbering Grammatically Integrated with Series Title

If the numbering, etc., of the series volume is grammatically integrated with the series title (cf. rule 1.6B1), explicitly make the series added entry so the numbering can be omitted from the title and recorded in subfield \$v of an 8XX field.

```
490 1# $a Publication number 22 of the Southwestern  
      Iowa History Society  
830 #0 $a Publication ... of the Southwestern Iowa  
      History Society ; $v no. 22.
```

```
490 1# $a The twenty-sixth L. Ray Buckendale lecture  
830 #0 $a L. Ray Buckendale lecture ; $v 26th.
```

```
490 1# $a 31. tom Biblioteki SIB  
830 #0 $a Biblioteka SIB ; $v 31. t.
```

More Than One System of Numbering

- * If more than one system of numbering is transcribed in the series statement (cf. LCRI 1.6G), explicitly make the series added entry to record in subfield \$v the one system specified in the series authority record.

```
490 1# $a _____ ; $v Bd. 6, Nr. 2 = Nr. 32  
830 #0 $a _____ ; $v Bd. 6, Nr. 2.
```

Numbering Errors

If the number has been corrected in the series statement (cf. rule 1.6G1), explicitly make the series added entry to give only the correct number.

```
490 1# $a Kieler historische Studien ; $v Bd. 24 [i.e.  
      25]  
830 #0 $a Kieler historische Studien ; $v Bd. 25.
```

Number Preceded by One or More Letters

- * When the numbers of items in the same series are preceded by a letter or letters varying from item to item (cf. LCRI 1.6B and LCRI 1.6G), explicitly make the series added entry to omit the letter or letters from subfield \$v.

in sources of different items in series: D1, C2, SW3, F4, etc.

490 1 \$a _____ ; \$v D1
 830 #0 \$a _____ ; \$v 1.

When the only information available is from the one item in hand, assume all items in that series will have the same letter(s) preceding the number until differing information is available. Record the letter(s) in subfield \$v. *

Numbering for Publications of the U.S. Congress

Explicitly make a series added entry for publications of the U.S. Congress to give the numbering relating to the numbering of the Congress and Session as the first part of subfield \$v, followed by the number of the publication within that Congress and Session. *

490 1# \$a Mis. doc / 49th Congress, 1st Session,
 Senate ; \$v no. 82
 830 #0 \$a Mis. doc (United States. Congress. Senate) ;
 \$v 49th Congress, 1st session, no. 82.

Transcribe the information for series publications of other legislatures as above if the situations are the same. *

Main Series and Indirectly Entered Subseries¹

1) *Main series is unnumbered*

Do not give a separate series added entry for the main series unless the main series has already appeared by itself on other publications. Instead, give a series added entry for the main series/subseries combination. Derive the series added entry or make it explicitly, depending upon whether the series statement and the numbering of the subseries (if the subseries is numbered) are in exactly the same form as the heading and form of numbering on the series authority record. *

440 #0 \$a Progress in nuclear energy. \$n Series V, \$p
 Metallurgy and fuels
 490 1# \$a University publications series. The social
 sciences ; \$v no. 4
 830 #0 \$a University publications series. \$p Social
 sciences ; \$v no. 4.
(made-up example)

Exception. If the main series appears on a later publication without any subseries, at that

¹[Recommended future placement: include in a new introductory Chapter 21 LCRI addressing number of series headings]

21.30L

point establish the main series separately and make the series added entry separately for this and any other item showing only the main series. However, if later forms show both the main series and a subseries, use in the added entry only the form in which the subseries is already established.

2) *Main series is numbered*

- * Give two series added entries: one for the main series and one for the main series/subseries combination.

```
490 1# $a Biblioteca de arte hispánico ; $v 8. $a
    Artes aplicadas ; $v 1
830 #0 $a Biblioteca de arte hispánico ; $v 8.
830 #0 $a Biblioteca de arte hispánico. $p Artes
    aplicadas ; $v 1.
```

3) *Hierarchy of numbered and unnumbered main series/subseries*

- * If a hierarchy of main series and multiple subseries is involved and only some are numbered, treat the unnumbered ones under 1) above and the numbered ones under 2) above.

Single Series Statement Encompassing More Than One Series

When a single series statement encompassing more than one series has been included in the bibliographic record either in the series area or as a quoted note, provide a series added entry for each traced series.

```
490 1 $a Publicación núm. 3 del Centro de Estudios
    Bilbitanos y núm 750 de la Institución
    "Fernando el Católico"
830 #0 $a Publicación ... del Centro de Estudios
    Bilbitanos ; $v no. 3.
830 #0 $a Publicación ... de la Institución "Fernando
    el Católico" ; $v no. 750.

500 $a "Ce volume fait également partie de ...
    Grandes publications tome XXIII, et de la
    collection des Cahiers de l'Association
    interuniversitaire de l'Est dont il
    constitue le no 21."
830 #0 $a Collection "Grandes publications" ; $v t.
    23.
830 #0 $a Cahiers de l'Association interuniversitaire
    de l'Est ; $v 21.
```

One or Several Series Headings

1) *Language editions*

a) *Numbered series.* Distinguish between series that are issued in two or more parallel editions, i.e., complete editions in each language for which separate records and the use of uniform titles (cf. AACR2 25.3C3) are appropriate and those that are issued variously in two or more languages but for which no separate editions of the series exist in any language. If no separate editions exist, establish a single heading, basing it on the first item in the series; if the first item is not available, base the heading provisionally on the earliest item available. If the first/earliest item itself is issued in several languages, choose the language of the title proper of the series according to the provisions of AACR2 1.0A3. In case of doubt, assume that a single edition exists.

b) *Unnumbered series.* If the language of the title of the series varies, generally establish separate headings for each language form and connect the headings by simple see also references. Do not assign AACR2 25.3C uniform titles.

2) *Changes in numbering (addition, omission, etc.)*

a) *Single series.* Consider that a single series exists if

(1) a numbered series has some random issues lacking numbering;

(2) a series first issued as unnumbered later has numbers and the numbering system takes into account the previous unnumbered issues (e.g., the first ten issues were published without numbering; numbering starts with "volume 11").

(3) a numbered series begins a new sequence of numbering either with or without wording such as "new series." (See 1.6G1 and its LCRI.)

b) *Multiple series.* Consider that multiple series exist if

(1) an unnumbered series becomes numbered and the numbering system excludes the previous unnumbered issues;

(2) a numbered series becomes unnumbered.

c) In case of doubt, consider the series to be a single series until other differing information is available.

3) *Different physical media*

a) *Single series.* Consider that a single series exists if the physical medium varies within the series (not a change from only one medium to only a different medium).

b) *Successive entry of a single monographic series.* If there is a change from only

21.30L

- * one medium to only a different medium, create a successive entry heading for the monographic
- * series published in the different medium (cf. LCRI 21.3B).
- *
- * c) *Multiple series*. Consider that multiple series exist if all parts of the series are
- * each published in two or more different physical media. If the headings for the series are the
- * same, add a qualifier to break the conflict in the headings. If the headings are not the same,
- * connect the headings by simple see also references.
- *
- * d) In case of doubt, consider the series to be a single series until other differing
- * information is available.

22.1B. GENERAL RULE.

Persons Treated in the Same Manner as Authors

In determining the name by which a person is commonly known, the rule distinguishes between “authors” and others. For purposes of simplification, generally use the approach applied to authors also to

1) persons who work in a context other than that of writing text, e.g., a painter, a sculptor, a performer whose name appears in a formal statement found in the item (e.g., statement of responsibility)

2) composers, regardless of whether their names appear in a statement of responsibility or not.

Form of Name

1) *Surname alone) single author.* For a person known primarily as an author, if the chief source of information shows this person as the single author and shows his/her surname without other names, search briefly to see if there are other publications that are his/her works. If the search is successful, use the form found most frequently. Otherwise, use the surname without other names as the heading. Change the heading if subsequently received items show other names with the surname in the chief source of information. *N.B.* See LCRI 22.5C5 for a different treatment of authors writing in Portuguese. *

2) *Surname alone) multiple authors.* For persons known primarily as authors, if the chief source of information shows more than one person as author and shows each surname without other names, add the forenames provided they can be found in the item being cataloged. Otherwise, follow the preceding instructions for single authors represented by surnames alone.

3) *Abbreviated name.* If the name selected for the heading for a person known primarily as an author contains a name represented by an abbreviation other than by an initial, use the abbreviated form in the heading. (If the full form of the name for the particular person is available at the time the heading is established, add it within parentheses, cf. 22.18.)

name: Wm. Brownridge

heading: 100 1# \$a Brownridge, Wm. \$q (William)
400 1# \$a Brownridge, William

name: Manuel Fdez.-Rivera García

heading: 100 1# \$a Fdez.-Rivera García, Manuel \$q
(Fernández-Rivera García)
400 1# \$a Fernández-Rivera García, Manuel

22.1B

name: Sa. Freeman

heading: 100 1# \$a Freeman, Sa. \$q (Samuel)
400 1# \$a Freeman, Samuel

name: Th. Ziehen

heading: 100 1# \$a Ziehen, Th. \$q (Theodor)
400 1# \$a Ziehen, Theodor

name: Th. de Waal

heading: 100 1# \$a Waal, Th. de

name: Mohd. Taib Osman

heading: 100 0# \$a Mohd. Taib Osman

4) *Phrase or other appellation.* For persons (either authors or others) known by only a phrase or other appellation that does not contain a real name (cf. 22.11), use the form found in English-language reference sources if the phrase, etc., was not used by the person but was assigned to him/her by scholars later.

Sources for Names Treated as Authors

1) The rule does not limit the consideration of chief source of information to publications issued during the person's lifetime; this is deliberate: consider also posthumous publications.

2) For persons living before 1801, when chief sources of information show one form of name and another form is used in modern reference sources in the person's language, prefer the latter.

3) Determine the name of a composer from the form found in the chief sources of information in publications of the printed music in the composer's language. If no form in these chief sources of information is in the composer's language, determine the name from reference sources of the composer's country of residence or activity. If the name is not listed in reference sources of the composer's country of residence or activity, use the form found in the chief sources of information.

Sources for Names Not Treated as Authors and Persons Who Appear Primarily as Subjects

1) The "reference sources" mentioned in footnote 1 of the rules must be issued in the person's language or in the language of his/her country of residence or activity.

2) For persons who are found both in the usual reference tools (encyclopedias, etc.) and in other sources such as works about the person, two different forms may be seen, each consistently appearing in one of the two types of sources. In that case, use judgment and choose the form that is most likely to be the one sought by library users.

3) If the only reference source is the item being cataloged, generally use the fullest form found anywhere in the item whenever the name varies in fullness. If the item gives both a nickname

and a real name, generally use the real name. When a less full form or a nickname is clearly the one by which the person is best known, however, use this less full form or the nickname in the heading.

Punctuation/Spacing Conventions in Personal Name Heading Access Points in Name Authority and Bibliographic Records

These guidelines appear also in LCRI 1.0C.

1) *Initials/letters*

a) *Name portion of heading*

Periods. If the name of a person consists of or contains initials, input a period after an initial if it is certain that the letter is an initial. In case of doubt, do not input a period.

```
100 1# $a Eliot, T. S.
100 0# $a H. D.
```

If the name consists of separate letters that are presumed not to be initials, omit or include periods according to the predominant usage of the person.

```
100 0# $a X Y Z
```

Spaces. If the name contains two or more forenames represented by initials, consists entirely of initials, or consists entirely of separate letters that are not initials, input a single space between the initials/letters in all cases.

```
100 1# $a Eliot, T. S.
100 0# $a H. D.
100 0# $a X Y Z
```

b) *"Additions" to name headings*

Periods. With initials, include periods unless the author's predominant usage makes it clear that the author omits them.

Spaces. Do not leave spaces between single initials/letters.

```
100 1# $a Brown, G. B., $c F.I.P.S.
```

Treat an abbreviation consisting of more than a single letter as if it were a distinct word, separating it with a space from preceding and succeeding words or initials/letters.

```
100 1# $a Brown, G. B., $c Ph. D.
```

22.1B

2) *Names with portions abbreviated or missing.* If a part of a name is abbreviated (two or more letters present as opposed to a single letter used as an initial) or if a forename is missing from a name entered under surname, do not leave open space after the abbreviation or missing forename. Instead, insert, as appropriate,

a period;

100 1# \$a Tissot.

(Add period at end in bibliographic record, but not in authority record)

100 1# \$a Corpeleijn, W. F. Th.

100 1# \$a Junager, Sv.-Aa.

(The hyphen reflects the usage of the language of the name)

a period and one space;

100 1# \$a Enschedé, Ch. J.

a period and a comma.

100 1# \$a Jones, Th., \$d 1910-

100 1# \$a Calles Ll., Alfonso

100 1# \$a Dahlan Aman, Mohd., \$c Haji

(For these names, add period at end in bibliographic record, but not in authority record)

3) *Surnames alone including prefixes/particles.* If a name heading consisting entirely of one or more surnames also contains a separately written prefix/particle, see instructions in LCRI 22.5D.

4) *Bibliographic description.* Note that the spacing and punctuation conventions applied to personal names used in access points differ from those used in the descriptive portion of a bibliographic record; for the latter, see LCRI 1.0C.

22.8A1. ENTRY UNDER GIVEN NAME, ETC. GENERAL RULE.

If the name chosen for the heading is based on a form found in non-English sources (cf. 22.3B, 22.3C1) and the name found in these sources includes "words or phrases denoting place of origin, domicile, occupation, or other characteristic that are commonly associated with the name," use in the heading the forms for these words and phrases that are found in the sources used.

	<i>source:</i> Shemu'el Duber mi-Barisov	*
	<i>heading:</i> 100 0# \$a Shemu'el Duber, \$c mi-Barisov	*
<i>not</i>	100 0# \$a Shemu'el Duber, \$c of Barisov	*

If words and phrases denoting place, occupation, etc., appear only in complex statements that contain other elements, generally do not treat them as being "commonly associated" with the name. However, if the exclusion of such words and phrases results in a heading that conflicts, they may be added to the heading as a parenthetical qualifier (22.19A). (If added, use English forms whenever possible.)

Generally, this rule requires a comma between the name and an associated phrase. Note, however, that in languages **other than English** there are examples of a single name that cannot be broken down into the components "name" and "phrase." Do not punctuate these with a comma. (However, make a reference from the form using a comma.) Several examples are furnished by the headings for Carmelites and certain other religious who formerly took a name in religion that combined a forename with the name of a saint, of a dogma, or of some event in the life of Jesus or Mary.

100 0# \$a Marie de l'Incarnation	
400 0# \$a Marie, ‡c de l'Incarnation	
100 0# \$a Elisabeth de la Trinité	
400 0# \$a Elisabeth, \$c de la Trinité	
100 0# \$a Marie de Saint Bernard	
400 0# \$a Marie, \$c de Saint Bernard	
100 0# \$a John of the Cross	*
400 0# \$a John, ‡c of the Cross	

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

25.1. USE OF UNIFORM TITLES.

Updating Uniform Titles Entered Under Name Headings

Pre-AACR2 forms of uniform titles on machine-readable bibliographic records were updated to their AACR2 forms in the bibliographic "flip" of the database whenever the pre-AACR2 uniform title appeared as a valid linking reference on a name authority record for the uniform title. (See LCRI 26 for the situations in which a linking reference can be made for a uniform title.) Update individually each pre-AACR2 uniform title that appears on a bibliographic record and is not covered by a linking reference.

When assigning a uniform title to a newly cataloged item, search the database to verify that this particular uniform title has been formulated in accord with current policy on existing MARC bibliographic records. Update each bibliographic record that does not reflect current policy on uniform titles if the record falls into one of the categories listed below. (*Note:* Although a uniform title may not need to be assigned to the item being cataloged (cf. 25.1A), other editions of the item already in the file may show a uniform title; these existing uniform titles may need to be changed if they fall into one of the categories listed below.)

1) If the uniform title pertaining to the item being cataloged is for a single work, change the existing bibliographic records that pertain to the "basic" uniform title, i.e., without language, part, or other subdivisions. If the uniform title pertaining to the item being cataloged contains a subdivision of the basic uniform title, change the bibliographic records that pertain to the same subdivision. (Existing bibliographic records for other subdivisions will be changed when these subdivisions are needed in new cataloging.)

2) If the uniform title pertaining to the item being cataloged is for the collective uniform title "Works" or "Selections" plus any of its subdivisions (e.g., date, language), change all the existing bibliographic records to reflect current policy on these two collective uniform titles (LCRI 25.8-25.9).

3) If the item being cataloged pertains to a collection of three or more works in one particular form, change all the existing bibliographic records pertaining to collections in this particular form to reflect current policy on works in a single form (LCRI 25.10).

4) Make changes to uniform titles that appear in all access points except series, i.e., main entries, added entries, subject entries.

5) Make even "small" corrections to bring the uniform titles into agreement with current practice, e.g., delete initial articles, change the connective between multiple languages from "and" to "&."

6) When changing or adding a uniform title to an existing bibliographic record, give the name heading portion in its correct AACR2 form even if a linking reference from the pre-AACR2 form is traced on the name authority record for the name heading. Do not update other name headings on any of the bibliographic records being handled.

7) Change existing uniform title name authority records to reflect the revised bibliographic

25.1

records. Adjust or delete invalid references but add only references that pertain to the item being cataloged. Create a name authority record for a uniform title only for the item being cataloged and only if one is needed according to current practice. *Optionally*, on these name authority records, trace a linking reference if one is appropriate according to LCRI 26. (Do not create a name authority record solely to trace a linking reference.)

Single Work or Collection

It is necessary to distinguish collections from publications that contain a single main work with lesser works. Normally, rely on the wording of the chief source to make this distinction, as reflected in the following manufactured examples:

Christmas Carol, The Old Curiosity
Shop and Pickwick Papers
(*A collection*)

The Mystery of Edwin Drood, with
completions of the story by various hands
(*An edition of the Dickens work,
with supplementary texts*)

Marine Fisheries Law and Coastal
Waterways Law
(*A collection*)

Commercial Code and Supplementary
Legislation
(*An edition of the codes, with
subordinate texts*)

Applicability

Use a uniform title unless the *complete* uniform title that would be assigned is exactly the same as the title proper of the item.

Exceptions

1) Do not use a uniform title when the only difference is the presence of an initial article in the bibliographic title proper.

2) For certain anonymous classics that are entered under uniform title main entry heading and that have been published in many editions, in different languages, and under different titles (e.g., Beowulf, Chanson de Roland), use a uniform title for all editions. This includes editions in the original language when the title proper is the same as the uniform title assigned.

I/J, U/V

When a title chosen for the uniform title involves regularization of i/j, u/v, apply the following: use “i” for vowels (e.g., iter, Ilias); use “j” for consonants (e.g., jus, Julius); use “u” for vowels (e.g., uva, Ursa Major); use “v” for consonants (e.g., vox, Victoria); use “w” for consonantal “uu” or “vv” (e.g., Windelia). Follow this directive for all uniform titles regardless of the particular publication or of the work it contains.

Exception: *PCC practice*: For the uniform title for a series published after 1800, transcribe “i” and “j” as they appear.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

25.5B CONFLICT RESOLUTION.**TABLE OF CONTENTS****General****Serials (Including Numbered and Unnumbered Monographic Series) Series Entered Under Title**

- 1) *General*
- 2) *Choice of qualifying term*
- 3) *Form of qualifying term*
- 4) *Change in qualifier*
- 5) *Unnumbered/numbered titles from the same body*
- 6) *Serial section title or subseries title with initial article*
- 7) *Numbering grammatically integrated with title proper*
- 8) *Serial common title or main series title not issued alone or lacking numbering*
- 9) *Serial common title or main series title issued alone or has numbering*
- 10) *Supplement title entered subordinately to main title*

Serials (Including Numbered and Unnumbered Monographic Series) Entered Under Name Heading

- 1) *General*
- 2) *Choice of qualifying term*

Monographs

- 1) *Single-part monograph or not-analyzed multipart item*
- 2) *Analyzed multipart item entered under a title proper*
- 3) *Analyzed multipart item entered under a name heading*
- 4) *Collective uniform title headings “Works” and “Selections”:* NAR and SAR for different multipart items

Integrating Resources**Series-Like Phrases**

- 1) *Entry under title*
- 2) *Entry under name heading*
- 3) *Conflict with another phrase heading*

Title/Phrase Heading in Series Authority Record Identical to Personal or Corporate Name**Radio and Television Programs****U.S. Census Publications**

25.5B

Comics

Motion Pictures

Choreographic Works

- 1) *Background*
- 2) *Uniform titles for choreographic works*

Named Individual Works of Art

Appendix 1: Motion Pictures, Television Programs, Radio Programs

* The first part of this LCRI addresses conflict resolution for serials (including numbered and unnumbered monographic series). This part of the LCRI represents *LC/PCC practice*. As of June 1, 2006, LC catalogers will consult SARS only when determining if conflict exists.

Also, see the sections “Monographs” and “Integrating Resources” below for guidelines about the use of qualifiers for single-volume monographs, multipart items, and integrating resources.

Note: Indicators are not given in the examples when the heading could be used in either an authority or a bibliographic record because the indicators in authority and bibliographic records are not the same for the 130 field.

General

1) *The "catalog" when testing for conflict.* When searching the catalog to determine if a uniform title is needed for a serial/series or multipart item, define the "catalog" as the file against which the searching and cataloging is being done. In addition, catalogers (including LC overseas offices' catalogers and PCC participants) may take into account *any* serial/series or multipart item with the same title of which they know, whether or not it is in the catalog.

2) *Eligible title fields for conflict*

a) Take into account the title proper of a serial/series/multipart item; such a title proper can be found in the 245, 247, 4XX, 730, 760-787, 8XX fields of bibliographic records and the 130 field of series authority records (SARS).

b) Do not take into account variant forms of title represented by added entries (246, 740 fields) in bibliographic records or by cross references (4XX fields) in name and series authority records. (*Note:* according to LCRI 26.5A, a qualifier is added to a cross reference in the authority record to break the conflict with a title proper in the same or another record.)

3) Resolve the conflict by using a uniform title heading or name heading/uniform title in the bibliographic or series authority record being created. Do not also add a uniform title heading or a

name heading/uniform title to the existing record.

Exceptions

a) See the paragraph for physical medium under “Choice of qualifying term” in “Serials (Including Numbered and Unnumbered Monographic Series) ...” entered under title and under name heading.

b) See 5) in the "Serials (Including Numbered and Unnumbered Monographic Series) Entered Under Title" section below for adding "(Unnumbered)" as qualifier.

c) See 1)b), 1)c), 4), and 5) in the "Monographs" section below.

d) See 2) in the "Title/Phrase Heading in Series Authority Record Identical to Personal or Corporate Name" section below.

4) Use the uniform title heading or name heading/uniform title whenever the serial/series or multipart item is referred to in other access points (added or subject entries, subseries headings, etc.) and in linking notes.

5) Do not predict a conflict.

6) *Republications*. When a serial/series/multipart item is republished or reproduced (as a text, as a microform, as large print, as a braille edition, as a digitized reproduction, etc.), do not use a uniform title to distinguish one of these republications from the original. If the original itself has a uniform title, use the same uniform title for the republication.

Serials (Including Numbered and Unnumbered Monographic Series) Series Entered Under Title

1) *General*. When creating a bibliographic record for a serial, a series authority record for a serial/series, or a name authority record for a serial, construct a uniform title made up of the title proper plus a parenthetical qualifier to distinguish the serial/series from another with the same title proper in a bibliographic record, in the heading of any series authority record (for series, multipart item, phrase, or serial), or in the heading of any name authority record. Also construct a uniform title when a serial becomes an integrating resource (or vice versa) but doesn't change its title proper.

2) *Choice of qualifying term*

a) *Title proper is a "generic" title (i.e., it consists solely of an indication of type of publication and/or periodicity, exclusive of articles, prepositions, and conjunctions)*. Use as the qualifier the heading for the body issuing or publishing the serial/series. If more than one corporate body is associated with the work, choose the body responsible for issuing the serial/series, rather than the one only publishing it. If multiple bodies are performing the same function, generally choose the one named first.

25.5B

130 \$a Bulletin (British Columbia. Dept. of Mines and Petroleum Resources)
130 \$a Bulletin (Université libre de Bruxelles. Service de physique des particules élémentaires)

130 \$a Occasional paper (Australia. Bureau of Industry Economics)
130 \$a Occasional paper (King's College (University of London). Dept. of Geography)
130 \$a Occasional paper (Spark M. Matsunaga Institute for Peace)

b) *Other situations.* Use judgment in determining the *most appropriate* qualifier for the serial/series being cataloged. Possible qualifiers are given in the following list; the listing is not prescriptive and is not in priority order. If none of these qualifiers is appropriate, use any word(s) that will serve to distinguish the one serial/series from the other. Use more than one qualifier if needed to make the uniform title unique.

- ! corporate body
- ! date of publication¹
- ! descriptive data elements, e.g., edition statement, GMD, physical medium
- ! place of publication²

130 0# \$a Social sciences index (CD-ROM)
245 10 \$a Social sciences index \$h [electronic resource]

130 0# \$a Peterson's financial aid service (IBM version)
245 10 \$a Peterson's financial aid service \$h [electronic resource]

130 0# \$a Peterson's financial aid service (Macintosh version)
245 10 \$a Peterson's financial aid service \$h [electronic resource]

Generally avoid use of the terms “print” and “text” as qualifiers because they are vague and there is not a consensus as to their appropriate use. When breaking the conflict between separate

¹Choose the date of publication (not date from chronological designation) of the first issue published or the earliest issue in hand, in that order of preference.

²If the serial/series is published in more than one place, choose as the qualifying term the place that would be named first in the publication, distribution, etc., area for the first issue published, the earliest issue for which a place is known, or the earliest issue in hand, in that order of preference. If the name of the local place has changed, use in the qualifier the name the place had at the time the first/earliest issue was published.

headings for the same title published in multiple physical media, add a qualifier to the heading for the physical medium that isn't printed text on paper (even if that means assigning a qualifier to a heading in an existing record).

130 \$a Genetic research update

130 \$a Genetic research update (CD-ROM)

3) *Form of qualifying term*

a) *Corporate body.* Use the AACR2 form of the name exactly as given on the name authority record for the corporate body.

130 \$a Special report (Northern Illinois University.
Center for Southeast Asian Studies)

130 \$a Occasional publication (Popular Archaeology
(Firm))

b) *Place of publication.* Use the AACR2 form from the name authority record for the place minus any cataloger's addition (cf. AACR2 24.4C1); record the name of the larger place preceded by a comma (cf. AACR2 23.4A1).

130 \$a African primary texts (Madison, Wis.)

130 \$a Rural development studies (Uppsala, Sweden)

130 \$a New age journal (Brighton, Boston, Mass.)

c) *Multiple qualifiers.* If more than one qualifier is needed, separate the qualifiers with a space-colon-space within one set of parentheses. Exception: if one of the qualifiers is "(Series)," give that qualifier first and enclose each qualifier in its own set of parentheses.

130 \$a Bulletin (Canadian Association of University
Teachers : 1973)

130 \$a Washington gazette (Washington, D.C. : Daily)

130 \$a WP (Series) (United States. Bureau of the Census)

4) *Change in qualifier*

a) *Body used as qualifier*

i) If the name of the body changes or the body is no longer involved with the serial/series, create a new record for the serial/series.

130 \$a Monograph series (American Bar Association.
Special Committee on Alternative Means of Dispute
Resolution)

25.5B

130 \$a Monograph series (American Bar Association.
Special Committee on Dispute Resolution)

ii) If the name of the body changes but one name authority record is used for both forms of name or if the heading on the one name authority record is revised, do not create a new record for the serial/series. Change the form of name in the qualifier, as necessary, to match the heading in the name authority record.

130 \$a _____ (Instytut belaruskai kul'tury
(Minsk, Byelorussian S.S.R.))

would be changed to

130 \$a _____ (Instytut belaruskai kul'tury
(Minsk, Belarus))

b) *Place used as qualifier.*

i) If the serial/series "moves" to another city, do not create a new record. On a series authority record, add a reference from title proper with the new place as qualifier. In a serial bibliographic record, add information about the change in place of publication.

130 \$a _____ (Chicago, Ill.)

430 \$a _____ (Boston, Mass.)

ii) If the name of the place changes and a separate name authority record is created for that name, do not create a new record for the serial/series. Do not change the qualifier. In a series authority record, give a reference using the later form as the qualifier.

130 \$a _____ (Leningrad, R.S.F.S.R.)

430 \$a _____ (Saint Petersburg, Russia)

(two name authority records exist)

iii) If the name for the place changes but one name authority record is used for both forms of name or if the heading on the one name authority record is revised, do not create a new record for the serial/series. Change the form of name in the qualifier, as necessary, to match the heading in the name authority record.

130 \$a _____ (Kinshasa, Zaire)

would be changed to:

130 \$a _____ (Kinshasa, Congo)

c) *Other qualifiers.* If the information used as qualifier changes in form or fact, do not create a new record. In a series authority record, add a reference from the title proper and the changed qualifier if it would help in identification. In a serial bibliographic record, add information if appropriate.

130 \$a _____ (Middle Atlantic ed.)

(current items labelled as "Mid-Atlantic edition")

5) *Unnumbered/numbered titles from the same body.* If one body issues both an unnumbered series and a numbered series/serial with the same title, add the qualifier "(Unnumbered)" to the title for the unnumbered series in all cases of such a conflict. (For example, if the new title is numbered and the existing title is unnumbered, change the existing unnumbered series to add "(Unnumbered)" to the title.) Do not apply this technique when some issues of a series lack numbering.

6) *Serial section title or subseries title with initial article.* If the title of a section of a serial or the title of a subseries begins with an initial article, create a uniform title to delete that initial article. Delete the initial article even if the section or subseries title is preceded by a numeric or alphabetic designation. In the series statement in an analytic record or in the title proper and statement of responsibility area of a serial record, give the title as found.

title proper: American men and women of science. The medical sciences

serial record:

130 \$a American men and women of science. \$p
Medical sciences.

245 \$a American men and women of science. \$p
The medical sciences.

title proper: Progress in nuclear energy. Series VIII, The economics of nuclear power

analytic record:

490 1 \$a Progress in nuclear energy. Series
VIII, The economics of nuclear
power

830 0 \$a Progress in nuclear energy. \$n,
Series VIII, \$p Economics of
nuclear power

series authority record:

130 \$a Progress in nuclear energy. \$n Series
VIII, \$p Economics of nuclear power

7) *Numbering grammatically integrated with title proper.* If the title proper with grammatically-integrated numbering is not in the nominative case, create a uniform title to change the title to the nominative case. In the series statement in an analytic record, give the title as found (i.e., including the grammatically-integrated numbering). In the title proper and statement of responsibility area in a serial record, apply rule 12.1B7.

title proper: 31. tom Biblioteki SIB

analytic record:

490 1# \$a 31. tom Biblioteki SIB

830 #0 \$a Biblioteka SIB ; \$v 31. tom.

series authority record:

130 #0 \$a Biblioteka SIB
430 #0 \$a Biblioteki SIB

serial record:

130 0# \$a Biblioteka SIB
245 10 \$a Biblioteki SIB

title proper: Monumenta. Epistolarum tomus 1*analytic record:*

490 1# \$a Monumenta. Epistolarum tomus 1
830 #0 \$a Monumenta. \$p Epistolae ; \$v tomus 1.

series authority record:

130 #0 \$a Monumenta. \$p Epistolae
430 #0 \$a Monumenta. \$p Epistolarum

serial record:

130 0# \$a Monumenta. \$p Epistolae
245 10 \$a Monumenta. \$p Epistolarum ...

8) *Serial common title or main series title not issued alone or lacking numbering.* Do not test such a serial common title or main series title for conflict by itself. Test the entire title proper (the serial common title and its section title or the unnumbered main series and its subseries) for conflict. If the entire title proper conflicts with another title proper, add a qualifier at the end of the title proper.

title proper: Bulletin. Series W
search in catalog for entire title = no conflict
130 \$a Bulletin. \$n Series W

title proper: Bulletin. Series A
search in catalog for entire title = a conflict with another "Bulletin.
Series A"
130 \$a Bulletin. \$n Series A ([qualifier])

9) *Serial common title or main series title has been issued alone or has numbering.* First, test the serial common title or the main series title by itself for conflict and add a qualifier if needed at the end of that title. Then, test that title (plus qualifier if needed) and the section or subseries title together for conflict; add a qualifier if needed at the end of the section or subseries title.

title proper of numbered main series & subseries: University
papers. History series
search in catalog for main series title = a conflict with
another "University papers"
130 \$a University papers ([qualifier])

search in catalog for main series title plus qualifier
and subseries title = no conflict

130 \$a University papers ([qualifier]). \$p History series

10) *Supplement title entered subordinately to main title.* If the main title is already in the catalog, use its heading (may or may not have a qualifier) in the heading for the supplement. If the main title is not in the catalog, establish its AACR2 form (cf. LCRI 26.5B). Then, test the main title (plus qualifier if needed) and the supplement title together for conflict; add a qualifier if needed at the end of the supplement title.

title proper of main title with supplement: Statistical
bulletin. Supplement

search in catalog for main title = a conflict with another "Statistical
bulletin"

130 \$a Statistical bulletin ([qualifier])

search in catalog for main title plus qualifier and
supplement title = no conflict

130 \$a Statistical bulletin ([qualifier]). \$p Supplement

Serials (Including Numbered and Unnumbered Monographic Series) Entered Under Name Heading

1) *General.* When creating a bibliographic record for a serial, a series authority record for a serial/series, or a name authority record for a serial, construct a uniform title made up of the title proper plus a parenthetical qualifier to distinguish the serial/series from another with the same title proper entered under the same name heading in a bibliographic record, in the heading of any series authority record (for series, multipart item, phrase, serial), or in the heading of any name authority record. Also construct a uniform title when a serial becomes an integrating resource (or vice versa) but doesn't change its title proper.

2) *Choice of qualifying term.* Use judgment in determining the *most appropriate* qualifier for the serial/series being cataloged. Possible qualifiers are given in the following list; the listing is not in priority order. If none of these qualifiers is appropriate, use any word(s) that will serve to distinguish the one serial/series from the other. Use more than one qualifier if needed to make the uniform title unique.

- ! date of publication³
- ! descriptive data elements, e.g., edition statement

110 2# \$a World Food Programme.
240 10 \$a Annual report (1993)
245 10 \$a Annual report

³Choose the date of publication (not date from chronological designation) of the first issue published or the earliest issue in hand, in that order of preference.

25.5B

Generally avoid use of the terms “print” and “text” as qualifiers because they are vague and there is not a consensus as to their appropriate use. When breaking the conflict between separate headings for the same title published in multiple physical media, add a qualifier to the heading for the physical medium that isn’t printed text on paper (even if that means assigning a qualifier to a heading in an existing record).

Monographs⁴

* All the parts of this “monographs” section represent *LC practice* except for 4) below which
* has both *LC* and *PCC practice* as noted there. As of June 1, 2006, LC catalogers will consult SARS
* when determining if a conflict exists, when needing a heading for a subject or related work added
* entry, and when cataloging another manifestation requiring a uniform title (see sections below).

1) *Single-part monograph or not-analyzed multipart item*

a) *Conflict in the database.* If the main entry is the same as the main entry of another work represented by a bibliographic record or name/series authority record, do not assign a uniform title to either work simply to distinguish them, even if there are multiple editions of either work.

```
245 00 $a France / $c préface de Pierre Mendès-France.  
260 ## $a Genève ; $a New York :$b Nagel, $c 1955.
```

```
245 00 $a France.  
260 ## $a Paris : $b Librairie Larousse, $c 1967.
```

```
245 00 $a France.  
260 ## $a Paris : $b Documentation française, $c 1972.
```

b) *Needed for subject or related work added entry.* If the main entry is the same as the main entry of another work represented by a bibliographic record or name/series authority record, construct a uniform title consisting of the title proper plus a parenthetical qualifier.

i) Determine the qualifier according to the guidelines below in 2)a) for title

⁴Past practice for monographic electronic resources:

Prior to June 1990, a qualifier was added to the title of monographic electronic resources whenever the heading was needed in a secondary entry, without regard to conflict. Generally continue to use such headings in main, subject, and added entries on records for items cataloged after May 1990 (name authority records created in accord with these policies are routinely retained although they would not necessarily be needed under current policies).

Prior to December 2002, the qualifier used on monographic electronic resources was the general material designation "(Computer file)," sometimes in combination with the name of the producer of the resource. Headings that exist with this qualifier should not be changed to reflect current policy unless the heading needs to be changed for another reason.

proper main entry or 3)a) for name heading main entry.

ii) Change existing records in which the work appears as an access point (main entry, added entry, subject heading).

```
245 00 $a Gazetteer of Argentina : $b names approved by
      the United States Board on Geographic Names.
250 ## $a 3rd ed.
260 ## $a Washington : $b Defense Mapping Agency,
      $c 1992.
500 ## $a Rev. ed. of: Argentina. 1968.
730 0# $a Argentina (United States. Office of Geography)
```

revised bibliographic record for the 1968 work cited in 500 field above

```
130 0# $a Argentina (United States. Office of Geography)
245 10 $a Argentina : $b official standard names approved
      by the United States Board on Geographic Names.
260 ## $a Washington : $b Office of Geography, Dept. of
      the Interior, $c 1968.
```

c) *Another manifestation requiring a uniform title.* If the main entry of the original is the same as the main entry of another work represented by a bibliographic record or name/series authority record, construct a uniform title for the original consisting of the title proper plus a parenthetical qualifier. Then assign a uniform title to the manifestation (cf. AACR2 25.5C for translations, AACR2 25.6B3 for excerpts, etc.).

i) Determine the qualifier for the original according to the guidelines below in 2)a) for title proper main entry or 3)a) for name heading main entry.

ii) Change existing records in which the original work appears as an access point (main entry, added entry, subject heading).

translation of the 1955 work above

```
130 0# $a France (Geneva, Switzerland). $l English.
245 10 $a France / $c preface by Pierre Mendès-France ;
      translated by William H. Parker.
260 ## $a Geneva ; $a New York : $b Nagel, $c 1956.
```

revised bibliographic record for the 1955 work above

```
130 0# $a France (Geneva, Switzerland)
245 10 $a France / $c préface de Pierre Mendès-France.
260 ## $a Genève ; $a New York : $b Nagel, $c 1955.
```

2) *Analyzed multipart item entered under a title proper*

25.5B

a) *Conflict in the database.* If the title proper of the multipart item is the same as the title proper of another work represented by a bibliographic record or a name/series authority record, construct a uniform title made up of the title proper plus a parenthetical qualifier.

(i) Use judgment in determining the *most appropriate* qualifier. Possible qualifiers are given in the following list; the listing is *not* prescriptive and is *not* in priority order.

- ! corporate body
- ! date of publication⁵
- ! descriptive data elements, e.g., edition statement, GMD, physical medium
- ! place of publication⁶

130 \$a Continents of the world (Chicago, Ill.)

(ii) If none of these qualifiers is appropriate, use any word(s) that will serve to distinguish the one work from the other. Use more than one qualifier if needed to make the uniform title unique.

* b) *Needed for subject or related work added entry.* Use the heading in an existing series authority record for that multipart item. If such a record does not exist, make a name authority record.

* c) *Another manifestation requiring a uniform title.* Use the heading in an existing series authority record for the original multipart item; if such a record does not exist, make a name authority record. Then assign a uniform title to the manifestation (cf. AACR2 25.5C for translations, AACR2 25.6B3 for excerpts, etc.).

3) *Analyzed multipart item entered under a name heading*

a) *Conflict in the database.* If that name heading/title proper of the multipart item is the same as the name heading/title proper of another work represented by a bibliographic record or a name/series authority record, construct a uniform title made up of the title proper plus a parenthetical qualifier.

(i) Use judgment in determining the *most appropriate* qualifier. Possible qualifiers are given in the following list; the listing is not in priority order.

⁵Choose the date of publication of the first part published or the earliest part in hand, in that order of preference.

⁶If the multipart item is published in more than one place, choose as the qualifying term the place that would be named first in the publication, distribution, etc. area for the first part published, the earliest part for which a place is known, or the earliest part in hand, in that order of preference. If the name of the local place has changed, use in the qualifier the name the place had at the time the first/earliest part was published.

- ! date of publication⁷
- ! descriptive data elements, e.g., edition statement, GMD, physical medium
- ! place of publication⁸

100 1# \$a Elias, Norbert. \$t Über den Prozess der
Zivilisation. \$l English (Oxford, England)

(ii) If none of these qualifiers is appropriate, use any word(s) that will serve to distinguish the one work from the other. Use more than one qualifier if needed to make the uniform title unique.

b) *Needed for subject or related work added entry.* Use the heading in an existing series authority record for that multipart item. If such a record does not exist, make a name authority record. *

c) *Another manifestation requiring a uniform title.* Use the heading in an existing series authority record for the original multipart item; if such a record does not exist, make a name authority record. Then assign a uniform title to the manifestation (cf. AACR2 25.5C for translations, AACR2 25.6B3 for excerpts, etc.). *

4) *Collective uniform title headings “Works” and “Selections”:* NAR and SAR for different multipart items.

PCC practice: To break the conflict between headings created per LCRIS for rules 25.8 and 25.9, add a brief form of the publisher’s name in subfield \$s of the series authority record (even if that means revising a heading in an existing record). If there is still a conflict, add a parenthetical qualifier at the end of subfield \$s. *

100 1# \$a Twain, Mark, \$d 1835-1910. \$t Works. \$f 1996
(name authority record for a multipart item)

100 1# \$a Twain, Mark, \$d 1835-1910. \$t Works. \$f 1996.
\$s Whiting
(series authority record for a different multipart item)

⁷Choose the date of publication of the first part published or the earliest part in hand, in that order of preference.

⁸If the multipart item is published in more than one place, choose as the qualifying term the place that would be named first in the publication, distribution, etc. area for the first part published, the earliest part for which a place is known, or the earliest part in hand, in that order of preference. If the name of the local place has changed, use in the qualifier the name the place had at the time the first/earliest part was published.

25.5B

100 1# \$a Twain, Mark, \$d 1835-1910. \$t Works. \$f 1996.
\$s Whiting (Annotated ed.)
(series authority record for a different multipart item also
published by Whiting in 1996)

Exception: *LC music practice for analyzed multipart items with uniform title heading "Selections"*: Subfield \$f is not used to break a conflict between music headings. Instead, add a parenthetical qualifier at the end of subfield \$t. Use judgment in determining the most appropriate qualifier; give the qualifier in a brief form.

100 1# \$a Britten, Benjamin, \$d 1913-1976. \$t Selections
100 1# \$a Britten, Benjamin, \$d 1913-1976. \$t Selections
(Collins Classics)

100 1# \$a Telemann, Georg Philipp, \$d 1681-1767. \$t
Selections
100 1# \$a Telemann, Georg Philipp, \$d 1681-1767. \$t
Selections (Telemann-Archiv)

5) Generally avoid use of the terms “print” and “text” as qualifiers because they are vague and there is not a consensus as to their appropriate use. When breaking the conflict between separate headings for the same title published in multiple physical media, add a qualifier to the heading for the physical medium that isn’t printed text on paper (even if that means assigning a qualifier to a heading in an existing record).

Integrating Resources

LC/PCC practice: Apply the guidelines given above under "Monographs" also to integrating resources. Also construct a uniform title when a serial becomes an integrating resource (or vice versa) but doesn't change its title proper.

Series-Like Phrases

* *PCC practice*

1) *Entry under title*. Construct a uniform title made up of the phrase plus a parenthetical qualifier for any phrase entered under title if the phrase is identical to the title proper of a serial/series found in the catalog in a bibliographic record or the title proper in the heading of a series authority record for a series, multipart item, or serial. Follow the guidelines for adding a qualifier to a serial/series title (above).

130 \$a Interim reports (Australian National Antarctic
Research Expeditions)

2) *Entry under name heading*. Construct a uniform title made up of the phrase plus a parenthetical qualifier for any phrase entered under a name heading if the phrase is identical to a title proper of a serial/series entered under the same name heading in the catalog in a bibliographic record

or in the heading of a series authority record for a series, multipart item, or serial. Follow the guidelines for adding a qualifier to a serial/series title (above).

3) *Conflict with another phrase heading.* Do not create a separate series authority record for the second series-like phrase, constructing a uniform title made up of the phrase plus a parenthetical qualifier. Instead, modify the existing series authority record to make it an undifferentiated phrase record.

130 \$a Yolla Bolly Press book
130 \$a Quarto book

Title/Phrase Heading in Series Authority Record Identical to Personal or Corporate Name

PCC practice

*

1) If the title or phrase is identical to a personal or corporate (including geographic) name, construct a uniform title made up of the title proper or phrase plus the parenthetical qualifier "(Series)." That name may be found on the item being cataloged or in a heading or reference in a name authority record related or not related to the item being cataloged. Apply this technique also to subseries titles entered subordinately.

130 \$a Centre de recherches d'histoire ancienne (Series)
130 \$a Oxford Historical Society (Series)
130 \$a HAZ (Series)
130 \$a Facultat de Dret de l'Estudi General de Lleida (Series)
130 \$a Marco Polo (Series)
130 \$a United States (Series)
130 \$a DOD (Series)
130 \$a Metropolitan Books (Series)
130 \$a Posebna izdanja (Crnogorska akademija nauka i umjetnosti). \$p Odjeljenje društvenih nauka (Series)

2) If an existing title or phrase heading later conflicts with a name, add the qualifier "(Series)" to the series authority record heading.

Radio and Television Programs

See Appendix 1: Motion Pictures, Television Programs, Radio Programs

U.S. Census Publications

For U.S. Bureau of the Census publications that contain the census or parts of it, use a uniform title consisting of the name of the census, qualified by the year of the census. Add to this basic uniform title parts of the census as subdivisions.

25.5B

title proper: 1972 census of construction industries

uniform title: 130 \$a Census of construction industries
(1972)

title proper: Numerical list of manufactured products: 1972
census of manufactures

uniform title: 130 \$a Census of manufactures (1972). \$p
Numerical list of manufactured
products

title proper: Census of housing, 1960

uniform title: 130 \$a Census of housing (1960)

Comics

If a comic strip, single panel cartoon, etc., is entered under its title, establish a uniform title for the work that consists of its title, followed by an appropriate parenthetical qualifier (e.g., "Batman (Comic strip)").

Motion Pictures

See Appendix 1: Motion Pictures, Television Programs, Radio Programs

Choreographic Works

1) *Background*

In catalogs dealing with dance material, there is a need both to collocate different versions of the same basic work under the same title and to differentiate between the different versions of the work in a meaningful way. A choreographic dance work, i.e., a dance created by a specific person, will often have a title that is the same as or similar to a musical or literary work that accompanies or is related to it. In addition, many dance works, though known by the same title, have been revised or adapted by different choreographers. The Dance Heritage Coalition, a group of several institutions, including the Library of Congress, has received funding for a project to prepare a catalog of primary research resources in dance history, including manuscript and archival materials, audio and videotape, printed texts and music, and visual collections. The coalition will add authority records to the national authority file for these materials, including newly created authority records and retrospective records from the files of the Dance Collection of the New York Public Library.

AACR2 does not include specific rules for the creation of uniform titles for choreographic works, and in the past LC has treated headings for individual choreographic dance works as subject headings, rather than name headings. However, because they do represent individual creative works and to meet the needs of the dance cataloging community, these headings should now be treated as name headings, and uniform titles for them will be constructed according to the guidelines below recommended by the Dance Heritage Coalition.

2) *Uniform titles for choreographic works*

a) *Qualifiers*. When the title of a choreographic dance work is needed as a subject or added entry, construct a uniform title consisting of the title of the work followed by the qualifier "(Choreographic work)." In addition, when the item represents a particular choreographer's version of the work, include the surname of the choreographer as part of the qualifier. Use the form of the surname found in the 100 field of the authority record for the choreographer.

130 \$a Romeo and Juliet (Choreographic work)
(for a book of photographs from various productions of choreographic works based on Shakespeare's play)

130 \$a Romeo and Juliet (Choreographic work : Smuin)
(for a series of photographs taken during a dress rehearsal of the first production of Michael Smuin's choreographic adaptation of Shakespeare's play)

If two or more choreographers share responsibility for the work, give their names in alphabetical order, unless one person is clearly principally responsible for the choreography, in which case that name should be listed first. Connect the names with the word "and."

130 \$a Return of the native (Choreographic work : Jones
 and Zane)

130 \$a Giselle (Choreographic work : Coralli and Perrot)

As appropriate, also include the following additions to the qualifier:

i) Choreographer's surname, after the original choreographer's surname.

If the choreographic work is derived from another choreographic work, follow the name of the choreographer with a comma, the word "after," and the surname of the original choreographer.

130 \$a How long brethren (Choreographic work : Tamiris)
 130 \$a How long brethren (Choreographic work : McIntyre,
 after Tamiris)
(for a notation score for a reconstruction of Helen Tamiris's original work)

ii) Date of a reconstruction

Optionally, if the material being cataloged relates to a reconstruction of a choreographic work that was originally staged at an earlier date, include in the qualifier the date of the reconstruction.

130 \$a Afternoon of a faun (Choreographic work :
 Nijinsky)

130 \$a Afternoon of a faun (Choreographic work :
 Markova, after Nijinsky : 1935)

25.5B

b) *Language of the title*

Use as the uniform title the title in the original language unless the work has become generally known in another language through extensive adaptation, e.g., when the choreographic work has been restaged in a number of different countries. In such cases, use the title found in the following reference work, making references from the title in other languages:

New York Public Library. *Dictionary Catalog of the Dance Collection*. Boston : G.K. Hall, 1974. 10 v. Annual supplement, *Bibliographic Guide to Dance*, 1975-

If the title is not found in the above source, consult the sources below, which are listed in order of precedence.

Beaumont, C.W. *Complete Book of Ballets*
Chujoy, A., and Manchester, P.W. *The Dance Encyclopedia*. Rev. ed.
Enciclopedia dello spettacolo
The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians
Koegler, H. *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of Ballet*. 2nd ed.
McDonagh, D. *The Complete Guide to Modern Dance*

130 \$a Cinderella (Choreographic work)
430 \$a Cendrillon (Choreographic work)
430 \$a Cenerentola (Choreographic work)

130 \$a Sylphide (Choreographic work)
430 \$a Sylph of the Highlands (Choreographic work)

Named Individual Works of Art

Add in parentheses an appropriate designation or designations (e.g., date, medium, size, owner, *catalogue raisonné* number, alternative title, location, state, color, owner's accession number) to distinguish between identical uniform titles for works entered under the same heading.⁹

100 1# \$a Eyck, Jan van, \$d 1390-1440. \$t Saint Francis receiving the stigmata (Galleria sabauda (Turin, Italy))
100 1# \$a Eyck, Jan van, \$d 1390-1440. \$t Saint Francis receiving the stigmata (Philadelphia Museum of Art)
100 1# \$a Cézanne, Paul, \$d 1839-1906. \$t Card players (Barnes Foundation)

⁹While date or owner (usually a museum) will often be the best qualifier, "appropriate" will depend upon the particular work of art, e.g., for a print, the state may be the best qualifier.

100 1# \$a Cézanne, Paul, \$d 1839-1906. \$t Card players
(Courtauld Institute Galleries)

100 1# \$a Cézanne, Paul, \$d 1839-1906. \$t Card players
(Metropolitan Museum of Art (New York, N.Y.))

100 1# \$a Cézanne, Paul, \$d 1839-1906. \$t Card players
(Musée d'Orsay)

100 1# \$a Pollock, Jackson, \$d 1912-1956. \$t Untitled
(1936)

100 1# \$a Pollock, Jackson, \$d 1912-1956. \$t Untitled
(1937)

(title of both works is Untitled)

100 1# \$a Picasso, Pablo, \$d 1881-1973. \$t Frugal repast
(1904, 1913 printing : etching)

100 1# \$a Picasso, Pablo, \$d 1881-1973. \$t Frugal repast
(1904, 1913 printing : etching : 2nd state)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

25.5B. APPENDIX I.

Table of Contents

Motion Pictures (including film and video formats)

Background

Guidelines

PCC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Cataloging a Motion Picture Itself)

- 1) *Same title, different resources*
- 2) *Different titles in the same language*
- 3) *Dubbed motion picture*
- 4) *Motion picture with translated intertitles*
- 5) *Subtitled motion picture released under a different title*
- 6) *Motion picture filmed simultaneously in different languages under different titles*
- 7) *Comprehensive title/Individual title*

PCC/LC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Providing Related Work/Subject Access When Cataloging Any Resource Related to a Motion Picture)

- 1) *General*
- 2) *Various types of versions of motion pictures released under a different title*
- 3) *Motion picture filmed simultaneously in different languages under different titles*
- 4) *Comprehensive title/Individual title*

Television Programs (including video and film formats)

Background

Guidelines

PCC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Cataloging a Television Program Itself)

- 1) *Same title, different resources*
- 2) *Comprehensive title/Individual title*
- 3) *Compilations*

25.5B Appendix I

PCC/LC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Providing Related Work/Subject Access When Cataloging Any Resource Related to a Television Program)

Radio Programs

Background

Guidelines

Assigning Uniform Titles (Cataloging a Radio Program Itself)

- 1) *Same title, different resources*
- 2) *Comprehensive title/Individual title*
- 3) *Compilations*

Assigning Uniform Titles (Providing Related Work/Subject Access When Cataloging Any Resource Related to a Radio Program)

Motion Pictures (including film and video formats)

Background

Because LC's Motion Picture, Broadcasting, and Recorded Sound Division (M/B/RS) uses *Archival Moving Image Materials*, 2nd ed. (AMIM2) in cataloging motion pictures instead of AACR2 chapter 7, one of the purposes of this section of the LCRI is to provide guidance for those libraries using AACR2 (including LC when cataloging resources that are related to motion pictures). For informational purposes, the LCRI notes those instances in which the AMIM2 practice differs from the "PCC practice:" (i.e., AACR2 interpretation).

The approach taken for the PCC practice is a practical one, resulting in the following departures from a strict AACR2 approach:

- 1) consistent use of the qualifier "(Motion picture)" whenever a qualifier is needed;
- 2) limiting name authority records for motion pictures to the "work" level to the exclusion of name authority records for "language expressions" of the work, e.g., dubbed motion pictures.

These departures stem from various factors:

- 1) the character of moving image materials themselves;
- 2) the need to provide consistency to accommodate PCC participants working in a shared environment;
- 3) the need to accommodate two sets of rules that take different approaches on some points (e.g., AMIM2 treats simultaneously released motion pictures in different languages as separate works, whereas AACR2 treats one release as the original and the other releases as translations; AACR2 calls for using language as an element in a uniform title for dubbed motion pictures, whereas AMIM2 does not);
- 4) the need to manage in a clear way what could be confusing situations related to certain language conditions.

Because AMIM2 does not ever call for using a language element in a uniform title for moving image resources, limiting uniform titles to the “work” level precludes the possible confusion of authority records at both the “work” and “language expression” levels in support of disparate practices.

Guidelines

The guidelines are based on the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 2nd ed. (AACR2).

PCC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Cataloging a Motion Picture Itself)¹

Assign a uniform title for a motion picture in the following situations. (If cataloging an individual title that is part of a comprehensive title (e.g., an episode of a theatrical serial), follow also the guidelines in paragraph 7 of this section below.)

1) *Same title, different resources.* Assign a uniform title to distinguish a motion picture entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title proper (*cf.* rule 25.1A). In determining a possible conflict, follow the guidelines set out in “1) The ‘catalog’ when testing for conflict” and “2) Eligible title fields for conflict” under the section headed “General” at the beginning of LCRI 25.5B.

¹Past PCC practice: PCC practice for primary access to motion pictures prior to 2005 may not reflect the guidelines in this LCRI with respect to the instances of qualification, to the form of qualification, or to the creation of a name authority record. Generally, continue to use such headings and name authority records. Do not make changes solely to reflect new practice. Limit changes to those stimulated by other conditions. Note that aside from creating a Name Authority Record (NAR) to qualify a heading for a motion picture, the usual conditions for creating a NAR as stated in the Introduction to Descriptive Cataloging Manual (DCM) Z1 continue to obtain.

25.5B Appendix I

When it is necessary to qualify a uniform title for a motion picture to break a conflict, use the qualifier "(Motion picture)." In such cases create a uniform title name authority record for the motion picture. (Use this uniform title in all entries for the particular work; update existing records as needed to insure this uniformity.) Do not create separate name authority records for separate language versions of a particular motion picture. Instead, treat the titles of separate language versions as variant titles, and make *see* references from them on the name authority record for the motion picture.

Bibliographic record for a previously cataloged resource:

245 00 \$a Stardust ...

Bibliographic record for a motion picture with the same title now being cataloged:

130 0# \$a Stardust (Motion picture)
245 10 \$a Stardust ...

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Stardust (Motion picture)

Note: AMIM2 does not follow this practice. Under AMIM2, a uniform title is not assigned solely to distinguish a motion picture entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title.

If a resource has been distributed theatrically, nontheatrically, as a home video, and/or aired on television, use the qualifier applicable to the original distribution. When the original distribution is unknown, cannot be determined, or is not applicable (e.g., undistributed home movies), use the qualifier "(Motion picture)." Use the qualifier "(Motion picture)" when the original distribution is directly to the home video market. Use the qualifier "(Television program)" for those resources originally aired on television whether or not they have subsequent home video releases.

If the uniform titles of different motion pictures would be the same, resolve the conflict by using the following additional qualifiers, in this order:

- year of original release (if unreleased, year of original production)
- director or filmmaker (use the shortest intelligible form of the name)
- production company (use the AACR2 form of the name exactly as given on the name authority record; in cases of multiple production companies, use the first one recorded in the statement of responsibility in the title and statement of responsibility area)

Change existing headings to insure, to the extent possible, synchronization between headings for different motion pictures with the same title.

Bibliographic record for a previously cataloged motion picture:

```
245 00 $a King Kong ...
260 ## $a Hollywood : $b RKO Radio Pictures, $c
      1933.
```

Bibliographic record for another motion picture with the same title now being cataloged:

```
130 0# $a King Kong (Motion picture : 1976)
245 10 $a King Kong ...
260 ## $a Hollywood : $b Paramount Pictures, $c
      1976 ...
```

Name authority record for the motion picture now being cataloged:

```
130 #0 $a King Kong (Motion picture : 1976)
```

Updated bibliographic record for the previously cataloged motion picture:

```
130 0# $a King Kong (Motion picture : 1933)
245 10 $a King Kong ...
260 ## $a Hollywood : $b RKO Radio Pictures, $c
      1933.
```

Name authority record for the previously cataloged motion picture:

```
130 #0 $a King Kong (Motion picture : 1933)
```

When a preferred qualifier does not resolve a conflict, retain that qualifier and add another. This structure will preserve synchronization between the headings for different motion pictures with the same title.

Bibliographic records:

```
130 0# $a Harlow (Motion picture : 1965 : Douglas)
130 0# $a Harlow (Motion picture : 1965 : Segal)
130 0# $a San Francisco (Motion picture : 1986 : Kaw
      Valley Films)
130 0# $a San Francisco (Motion picture : 1986 : Cycle
      Vision Tours, Inc.)
```

25.5B Appendix I

2) *Different titles in the same language.* Assign a uniform title for a motion picture released under different titles in the same language (*cf.* rule 25.3C1).

Bibliographic record for the U.S. version of a motion picture released earlier in the U.K. under a different title and the U.K. title conflicts with the title of another resource:

```
130 0# $a Stardust (Motion picture)
245 10 $a He loved an actress ...
```

Name authority record for the motion picture:

```
130 #0 $a Stardust (Motion picture)
430 #0 $a He loved an actress
```

Note: AMIM2 assigns a uniform title to the original motion picture and links the original to any subsequent versions released under different titles through related-work uniform title added entries.

3) *Dubbed motion picture.* Assign a uniform title for a dubbed motion picture (*cf.* rule 25.5C1).

Bibliographic record for a dubbed version of a motion picture:

```
130 0# $a Battaglia di Algeri. $1 English.
245 14 $a The battle of Algiers ...
      (The rule calls for adding language in the case of a dubbed motion
      picture)
```

Name authority record for the motion picture:

```
130 #0 $a Battaglia di Algeri
430 #0 $a Battle of Algiers

not 130 #0 $a Battaglia di Algeri. $1 English
```

* **Note:** AMIM2 assigns a uniform title to the original motion picture in the original language and links the original to the dubbed version through a related-work uniform title added entry in the record for the dubbed version.
*

Today's technology makes it possible to issue resources that contain various language-related conditions. In general, assign a uniform title and name the language(s) as specified in rule 25.5C1. For example, if a resource contains an original version of a motion picture and one dubbed in another language, name the original language second. If the resource contains two dubbed versions but not the original version, name both languages in the order specified by the rule. If a resource contains three or more dubbed versions, or the original and two or more dubbed versions, use the term "Polyglot" to identify the language in the uniform title.

Bibliographic record for a motion picture with the original language and two dubbed versions:

```
130 0# $a To live and die in L.A. $l Polyglot.  
245 10 $a To live and die in L.A. ...  
(Original in English, dubbed in French and Spanish)
```

A name authority record for the motion picture is not necessary.

Note, however, that if a resource contains a mixture of options, some of which are language-related selections and others not (in terms of the cataloging rules), apply the language-related specifications accordingly. For example, if a resource contains an original version in English, a dubbed version in French, and a subtitled version in Spanish, assign a uniform title followed by the language French (dubbed version) and English (original version). This applies because although three versions are present, the rule only calls for the use of language in the uniform title for two (dubbed and original). The rule does not call for adding language in the case of a motion picture with subtitles.

Bibliographic record for a motion picture with the original language, one dubbed version, and one subtitled version:

```
130 0# $a Raising Arizona. $l French & English.  
245 10 $a Raising Arizona ...  
(Original in English, dubbed in French, subtitled in Spanish)
```

A name authority record for the motion picture is not necessary.

4) *Motion picture with translated intertitles.* By analogy (there is no rule), apply to a silent motion picture that contains intertitles in a language different from that of the original release the same treatment as that applied to a dubbed motion picture.

Bibliographic record for a version of a motion picture with translated intertitles:

25.5B Appendix I

130 0# \$a Bronenoset's "Potemkin" (Motion picture).
\$l English.
245 14 \$a The battleship Potemkin ...
(Add the language of the translated intertitles)

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Bronenoset's "Potemkin" (Motion picture)
430 #0 \$a Battleship Potemkin

not 130 #0 \$a Bronenoset's "Potemkin" (Motion picture).
\$l English

5) *Subtitled motion picture released under a different title.* Assign a uniform title for a subtitled motion picture released under a different title (cf. rule 25.5C1). (The rule does not call for adding language in the case of a motion picture with subtitles.)

Bibliographic record for a subtitled version of a motion picture released under a different title:

130 0# \$a Shichinin no samurai.
245 10 \$a Seven samurai ...

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Shichinin no samurai
430 #0 \$a Seven samurai

* **Note:** AMIM2 assigns a uniform title to original the motion picture in the original language and links the original to the subtitled version through a related-work uniform title added entry in the record for the subtitled version.
*

6) *Motion picture filmed simultaneously in different languages under different titles.* Assign a uniform title for a motion picture filmed simultaneously in different language versions (cf. rule 25.3C3). Use the uniform title called for by the rule.

Bibliographic record for a German version of a motion picture filmed simultaneously in French and German:

130 0# \$a Coup de grâce.
245 14 \$a Der Fangschuss ...

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Coup de grâce
430 #0 \$a Fangschuss

Note: AMIM2 does not collocate under one title but treats each simultaneous production as a separate resource and links them through related-work uniform title added entries.

7) *Comprehensive title/Individual title.* When cataloging an individual title that is part of a comprehensive title, determine whether the individual titles were intended to be viewed consecutively or not. If the individual titles are to be viewed consecutively (e.g., theatrical serials, certain educational and technical materials), use as the title proper a structured combination of the components that consists of a comprehensive title and either an individual title or a numeric designation (e.g., episode number, chapter number) or both. In case of doubt, treat the individual title as intended to be viewed consecutively. Apply this treatment also to newsreels.

Bibliographic record:

245 04 \$a The nature of communism. \$n Vol. 1,
\$p Introduction to the course ...
(246 given or not based on the character of the individual title and
a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form)

Bibliographic record:

245 04 \$a The Lightning Raider. \$n Episode 11, \$p The
bars of death ...
246 30 \$a Bars of death
(246 given or not based on the character of the individual title and
a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form. Illustrates
that, unlike serial publications, a uniform title is not assigned
solely to remove an initial article preceding an individual title but
when one is assigned for some other reason, an initial article
preceding an individual title is not retained)

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a Works. \$n Volume 1 ...
4XX \$a MacAcademy, the video training series
(Videorecording used for training for Microsoft Works)

25.5B Appendix I

Bibliographic record:

130 0# \$a Introduction to mathematics (Motion picture).
\$n No. 1, \$p Numeration.

245 10 \$a Introduction to mathematics. \$n No. 1,
\$p Numeration ...

(Illustrates a conflict with another resource. When the comprehensive title is in conflict, add a qualifier after the comprehensive title. Giving 246 title access or not is based on the character of the individual title and a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form)

Name authority record:

130 #0 \$a Introduction to mathematics (Motion picture)

If the comprehensive title represents a publisher/distributor series, treat it as a series statement.

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a 12 angry men ...

4XX \$a Criterion collection
(“Criterion collection” is a series used by The Voyager Company when reissuing the motion picture on videodisc)

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a Boogie nights ...

4XX \$a New Line platinum series

PCC/LC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Providing Related Work/Subject Access When Cataloging Any Resource Related to a Motion Picture)²

² Past PCC/LC practice: PCC/LC practice for secondary access for motion pictures prior to 2005 will have resulted in instances of qualification now no longer called for. Generally,

1) *General.* In cataloging a resource related to a motion picture (e.g., a screenplay, a recording of music from a motion picture), use a related work (*cf.* rule 21.28)/subject added entry to provide related work/subject access to the motion picture. If it is necessary to distinguish a motion picture entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title, add the qualifier “(Motion picture).” In determining a possible conflict, follow the guidelines set out in “1) The ‘catalog’ when testing for conflict” and “2) Eligible title fields for conflict” under the section headed “General” at the beginning of LCRI 25.5B. If the motion picture for which related-work/subject access is being provided is an individual title associated with a comprehensive title, e.g., an episode of a theatrical serial, follow also the guidelines in paragraph 5 of this section below.

Bibliographic record for the music for a motion picture:

```
100 1# $a Copland, Aaron, $d 1900-  
245 14 $a The red pony ...
```

Related-work added entry for the motion picture that conflicts with the title of another motion picture:

```
730 0# $a Red pony (Motion picture : 1949)  
(Date added to break conflict with another motion picture with the  
same title)
```

Name authority record for the motion picture:

```
130 #0 $a Red pony (Motion picture : 1949)
```

Bibliographic record for a book about a motion picture:

```
100 1# $a Coppola, Eleanor.  
245 10 $a Notes ...
```

Subject access for the motion picture that conflicts with another resource:

```
630 00 $a Apocalypse now (Motion picture)
```

Name authority record for the motion picture:

continue to use such headings in main, subject, and added entries on records for items cataloged after 2004 (routinely retain name authority records created in accord with these policies although they would not necessarily be needed under current policies).

25.5B Appendix I

130 #0 \$a Apocalypse now (Motion picture)

2) *Various types of versions of motion pictures released under a different title.* If the related resource is a dubbed motion picture, a motion picture with translated intertitles, a subtitled motion picture, or a motion picture that has been released under a different title in the same language, use the uniform title of the original-release motion picture.

Title of original motion picture: La battaglia di Algeri

Title of English language dubbed or subtitled motion picture: The battle of Algiers

Title of translated screenplay for the motion picture: Gillo Pontecorvo's The battle of Algiers

Bibliographic record for the screenplay:

100 1# \$a Solinas, Franco, \$d 1927-
240 10 \$a Battaglia di Algeri. \$l English
245 10 \$a Gillo Pontecorvo's The battle of Algiers /
\$c a film written by Franco Solinas ...

Related-work added entry for the motion picture:

730 0# \$a Battaglia di Algeri.

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Battaglia di Algeri
430 #0 \$a Battle of Algiers

Title of original motion picture: Cabinet des Dr. Caligari

Title of motion picture with translated intertitles: The cabinet of Dr. Caligari

Title of screenplay for motion picture with translated intertitles: The cabinet of Dr. Caligari

Bibliographic record for a related work:

100 1# \$a Adkinson, R. V. \$q (Robert V.)
245 14 \$a The cabinet of Dr. Caligari : \$b a film by
Robert Wiene, Carl Mayer, and Hans Janowitz
: English translation and description of
action / \$c by R.V. Adkinson.

4XX \$a Classic film scripts

Related-work added entry for the motion picture:

730 0# \$a Cabinet des Dr. Caligari.

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Cabinet des Dr. Caligari
430 #0 \$a Cabinet of Dr. Caligari

Title of original motion picture: Shichinin no samurai

Title of subtitled motion picture: Seven samurai

Title of screenplay for subtitled motion picture: Seven samurai

Bibliographic record for a screenplay:

100 1# \$a Kurosawa, Akira, \$d 1910-
240 10 \$a Shichinin no samurai. \$1 English
245 14 \$a Seven samurai ...

Related-work added entry for the motion picture:

730 0# \$a Shichinin no samurai.

Name authority record for the motion picture:

130 #0 \$a Shichinin no samurai
430 #0 \$a Seven samurai

3) *Motion picture filmed simultaneously in different languages under different titles.* If the related resource is a motion picture filmed simultaneously in different languages (cf. rule 25.3C3), use the uniform title called for by the rule.

Title of motion picture in French: Coup de grâce

Title of motion picture in German: Der Fangschuss

Title of English translation of screenplay for German version: Screenplay
for Der Fangschuss

Bibliographic record for a screenplay:

25.5B Appendix I

```
100 1# $a [Author]
240 10 $a [Title of original screenplay in German].
      $1 English
245 10 $a Screenplay for Der Fangschuss ...
```

Related-work added entry for the motion picture:

```
730 0# $a Coup de grâce
```

Name authority record for the motion picture:

```
130 #0 $a Coup de grâce
430 #0 $a Fangschuss
```

4) *Comprehensive title/Individual title.* If the related resource is an individual title that is part of a comprehensive title, determine whether the individual titles were intended to be viewed consecutively or not. If they were not intended to be viewed consecutively, provide the related access to the individual title alone. If they were intended to be viewed consecutively (e.g., theatrical serials, certain educational and technical materials), provide as the related access a structured combination of components that consists of a comprehensive title and either an individual title or a numeric designation (e.g., episode number, chapter number) or both. Apply this treatment also when the resource being cataloged is related to a newsreel.

Bibliographic record for a novelization of a motion picture:

```
100 1# $a Goddard, Charles.
245 14 $a The perils of Pauline : $b a motion picture
      novel ...
```

Related-work added entry for a motion picture that conflicts with another motion picture with the same title:

```
730 0# $a Perils of Pauline (Motion picture : 1914).
      $n Episode 12.
```

(When the comprehensive title is in conflict, add a qualifier after the comprehensive title)

Name authority record for the motion picture:

```
130 #0 $a Perils of Pauline (Motion picture : 1914)
```

Television Programs (including video and film formats)

Background

Because LC's Motion Picture, Broadcasting, and Recorded Sound Division (M/B/RS) uses *Archival Moving Image Materials*, 2nd ed. (AMIM2) in cataloging television programs and because AACR2 is silent on the cataloging of television programs, one of the purposes of this section of the LCRI is to provide guidance for those libraries using AACR2 (including LC when cataloging resources that are related to television programs).

The approach taken for the PCC practice is a practical one, resulting in the following departures from a strict AACR2 approach:

- 1) consistent use of the qualifier "(Television program)" whenever a qualifier is needed for programs originally aired on television;
- 2) limiting name authority records for television programs to the "work" level to the exclusion of name authority records for "language expressions" of the work., e.g., dubbed television programs.

Guidelines

The guidelines are based on the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 2nd ed. (AACR2).

PCC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Cataloging a Television Program Itself)³

Assign a uniform title under the conditions listed for motion pictures that apply also to television programs. If cataloging an individual title that is part of a comprehensive title (e.g., an episode of a television series), follow also the guidelines in paragraph 2 of this section below. Note especially the following situations.

- 1) *Same title, different resources.* Assign a uniform title to distinguish a television program entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title (*cf.* rule 25.1A). In determining a possible conflict, follow the guidelines set out in "1) The 'catalog' when testing for conflict" and "2) Eligible title fields for conflict" under the section headed "General" at the beginning of LCRI 25.5B.

³Past PCC practice: PCC practice for primary access to television programs prior to 2005 may not reflect the guidelines in this LCRI with respect to the instances of qualification, to the form of qualification, or to the creation of a name authority record. Generally, continue to use such headings and name authority records. Do not make changes solely to reflect new practice. Limit changes to those stimulated by other conditions. Note that aside from creating a NAR to qualify a heading for a television program, the usual conditions for creating a NAR as stated in the Introduction to DCM Z1 continue to obtain.

25.5B Appendix I

When it is necessary to qualify a uniform title for a television program to break a conflict, use the qualifier “(Television program).” In such cases create a uniform title name authority record for the television program. (Use this uniform title in all entries for the particular work; update existing records as needed to insure this uniformity.) Do not create separate name authority records for separate language versions of a particular television program or for variant titles. Instead, treat the titles of separate language versions as variant titles and make *see* references from them as well as other variant titles on the name authority record for the television program.

Note: AMIM2 does not follow this practice. Under AMIM2, a uniform title is not assigned solely to distinguish a television program entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title.

If a resource has been distributed theatrically, nontheatrically, as a home video, and/or aired on television, use the qualifier applicable to the original distribution. When the original distribution is unknown, cannot be determined, or is not applicable (e.g., undistributed home movies), use the qualifier “(Motion picture).” Use the qualifier “(Motion picture)” when the original distribution is directly to the home video market. Use the qualifier “(Television program)” for those resources originally aired on television whether or not they have subsequent home video releases.

If the uniform titles of different television programs would be the same, resolve the conflict by using the following additional qualifiers, in this order:

year first telecast

production company or network (use the AACR2 form of the name exactly as given on the name authority record; in cases of multiple production companies, use the first one recorded in the statement of responsibility in the title and statement of responsibility area)

country of production (use the AACR2 form from the name authority record for the country minus any cataloger’s addition (cf. rule 24.4C1))

Change existing headings to insure, to the extent possible, synchronization between headings for different television programs with the same title. When a preferred qualifier does not resolve a conflict, retain that qualifier and add another. This structure will preserve synchronization between the headings for different television programs with the same title.

Bibliographic records:

```
130 0# $a Othello (Television program : 1963 :  
Canadian Broadcasting Corporation)
```

```
130 0# $a Othello (Television program : 1963 : WOR-TV
```

(Television station : New York, N.Y.)
(Illustrates that a television station can be a production company)

2) *Comprehensive title/Individual title.* When cataloging an individual title that is part of a comprehensive title (i.e., an original telecast series and not a publisher/distributor series that would be treated as a series statement), such as an episode of a television series, use as the title proper a structured combination that consists of a comprehensive title and either an individual title or a numeric designation (e.g., an episode number) or both.

a) *Individual titles intended to be viewed consecutively.* Determine whether the individual titles are to be viewed consecutively (e.g., certain limited series such as “Roots,” historical documentaries covering a specified time sequence, educational programs in which the material is presented sequentially). Viewing the individual titles consecutively actively contributes to, indeed may be dependent upon, an intelligible grasp of the material presented. If in doubt, treat the individual titles as not intended to be viewed consecutively.

Use as the title proper a structured combination that consists of a comprehensive title, a numeric designation (e.g., episode number, show number, production number), and an individual title when one is available.

Bibliographic records:

245 04 \$a The Civil War. \$n Episode 1, \$p 1861--the cause ...

245 04 \$a The Civil War. \$n Episode 2, \$p 1862--a very bloody affair ...

Bibliographic record:

130 0# \$a Introduction to mathematics (Television program). \$n No. 1, \$p Basic.

245 10 \$a Introduction to mathematics. \$n No. 1, \$p Basic ...

(Illustrates that when the comprehensive title conflicts with another resource, the qualifier is added after the comprehensive title. Giving 246 title access or not is based on the character of the individual title and a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form)

Name authority record:

25.5B Appendix I

130 #0 \$a Introduction to mathematics (Television program)

Bibliographic records:

245 00 \$a Roots--the next generations. \$n Show no. 1 ...

245 00 \$a Roots--the next generations. \$n Show no. 2 ...
(*Illustrates the absence of individual titles*)

A name authority record for the television series is not necessary.

In the absence of both a numeric designation and an individual title, use the date of telecast in the form [yyyy-mm-dd].

b) Individual titles not intended to be viewed consecutively. Because there is not a consistent approach in the world of television distribution regarding the assignment of numbers used to identify episodes of television series (episode/production/show numbers), use as the title proper a structured combination that consists of a comprehensive title and an individual title when one is available. In the absence of an individual title, use a numeric designation (e.g., episode number, show number, production number). When an individual title is used and a numeric designation is available, provide access to the numeric designation through varying title.

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a Mary Tyler Moore. \$p Chuckles bites the dust
...

246 30 \$a Chuckles bites the dust

246 3# \$a Mary Tyler Moore. \$n Episode no. 233

246 3# \$a Mary Tyler Moore. \$n Show no. 7507

(*246 for the individual title given or not based on the character of the individual title and a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form. Illustrates that a single episode may have more than one type of number*)

A name authority record for the television series is not necessary.

Bibliographic record:

130 0# \$a Paper chase (Television program). \$p Man
who could be king.
245 14 \$a The paper chase. \$p The man who could be
king ...
246 30 \$a Man who could be king
246 3# \$a Paper chase. \$n Program no. T-704

(Illustrates that when the comprehensive title conflicts with another resource, the qualifier is added after the comprehensive title. Illustrates that, unlike serials, a uniform title is not assigned solely to remove an initial article preceding an individual title, but when one is assigned for some other reason, an initial article preceding an individual title is not retained. Giving 246 title access or not to the individual title is based on the character of the individual title and a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form. Illustrates that when giving access to the episode number, the comprehensive title used is the same as that used in field 245 except for initial articles)

Name authority record for the television series:

130 #0 \$a Paper chase (Television program)

In the absence of an individual title, use a numeric designation. In the absence of both a numeric designation and an individual title, use the date of telecast in the form [yyyy-mm-dd].

Bibliographic records:

245 00 America 2night. \$n Episode no. 233 ...
245 00 Panorama. \$n [1983-07-09] ...

If the comprehensive title represents a publisher/distributor series, treat it as a series statement:

25.5B Appendix I

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a Tanner `88. \$p The night of the
Twinkies ...
246 30 \$a Night of the Twinkies
246 3# \$a Tanner `88. \$n Volume 1

4XX \$a Criterion television
(*“Criterion television” is a series used by The Voyager Company when reissuing the television program on videodisc. Giving 246 title access or not to the individual title is based on the character of the individual title and a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form*)

3) *Compilations.* These are usually selected portions of a television series. They may or may not relate to a particular season; treat them accordingly as follows:

1) for those that are a compilation of all the programs telecast in a particular season, collocate them by using the uniform title of the work as a whole followed by the term “Season” as the standard term to denote what may be called variously “year 1,” “season one,” “first season,” “vol. 1,” “first year,” etc., followed by the number of the season;

Bibliographic record

130 0# \$a All in the family (Television program). \$n
Season 1.
245 10 \$a All in the family. \$n The complete first
season \$h [videorecording] ...

Name authority record for the television series:

130 #0 All in the family (Television program)

Caution: Do not inadvertently treat a compilation of a complete series telecast over a short period of time as a season.

2) for selections from a particular season, use the pattern in 1) directly above and add the term “Selections”;

Bibliographic record

```
130 0# $a I love Lucy (Television program).
      $n Season 1. $k Selections.
245 10 $a I love Lucy. $n Season one. $n V. 9
      $h [videorecording] ...
```

Name authority record for the television series:

```
130 #0 I love Lucy (Television program)
```

Bibliographic record:

```
130 0# $a Rhoda. $n Season 3. $k Selections.
245 14 $a The very best of Rhoda. $n Season 3
      $h [videorecording] ...
```

(Two episodes of the television show broadcast in 1976)

A name authority record for the television series is not necessary.

3) for selections from two or more seasons or for those covered by a special rubric such as “The best of ...”, use the uniform title of the work as a whole followed only by the term “Selections”; when a selection with a special rubric relates to a single season, however, use the pattern in 2) directly above.

Bibliographic records:

```
130 0# $a Simpsons (Television program).
      $k Selections.
245 14 $a The best of the Simpsons $h
      [videorecording] ...

130 0# $a Simpsons (Television program).
      $k Selections.
245 14 $a The Simpsons $h [videorecording]
      :$b political party ...
```

(A compilation of politically themed episodes from the show)

Name authority record:

```
130 #0 $a Simpsons (Television program)
```

25.5B Appendix I

PCC/LC Practice for Assigning Uniform Titles (Providing Related Work/Subject Access When Cataloging Any Resource Related to a Television Program)⁴

In cataloging a resource related to a television program/series (e.g., a teleplay, a music recording for the television program/series), use a related work (*cf.* rule 21.28)/subject added entry to provide related-work/subject access to the television program/series. If it is necessary to distinguish a television program/series entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title, add the qualifier “(Television program).” In determining a possible conflict, follow the guidelines set out in “1) The ‘catalog’ when testing for conflict” and “2) Eligible title fields for conflict” under the section headed “General” at the beginning of LCRI 25.5B.

When a resource relates to a television series whose comprehensive title is not in conflict, do not use a qualifier.

Bibliographic record:

```
100 1# $a Fates, Gil, $d 1913-
245 10 $a What's my line? : $b the inside history of TV's
      most famous panel show ...
```

Subject added entry for the television series:

```
630 00 $a What's my line?
```

A name authority record for the television series is not necessary.

When a resource relates to a television series whose title is in conflict with another resource entered under the same title, use a qualifier to break the conflict.

Bibliographic record:

```
100 1# $a Dunning, Jennifer.
245 10 $a Great performances : $b a celebration ...
```

Subject added entry for the television series that conflicts with another resource:

```
630 00 Great performances (Television program)
```

⁴Past PCC/LC practice: PCC/LC practice for secondary access for television programs prior to 2005 will have resulted in instances of qualification now no longer called for. Generally, continue to use such headings in main, subject, and added entries on records for items cataloged after 2004 (routinely retain name authority records created in accord with these policies although they would not necessarily be needed under current policies).

Name authority record for the television series:

```
130 #0 Great performances (Television program)
```

In such a case standard procedure calls for applying the uniform title to all instances of the comprehensive title, including the instances of structured combinations used for individual episodes of the television series:

Bibliographic record for an episode of Great performances:

```
130 0# $a Great performances (Television program). $p
    Solti conducts Mendelssohn ...
245 00 $a Great performances. $p Solti conducts
    Mendelssohn ...
```

LC practice: Since in LC's catalog the actual episodes of a television series are cataloged according to AMIM2 rules, catalogers following AACR2 practice in providing related access to the television series will not update AMIM2 records to reflect the practice illustrated above. This is the result of applying one set of rules to the actual cataloging of the materials and another set when providing secondary/subject access.

Radio Programs*Background*

For cataloging radio programs, LC follows the AACR2 approach stated in this LCRI. Therefore, PCC and LC practice are the same.

Guidelines

The guidelines are based on the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 2nd ed. (AACR2).

Assigning Uniform Titles (Cataloging a Radio Program Itself)⁵

⁵Past PCC/LC practice: PCC/LC practice for primary access to radio programs prior to 2005 may not reflect the guidelines in this LCRI with respect to the instances of qualification, to the form of qualification, or to the creation of a name authority record. Generally, continue to use such headings and name authority records. Do not make changes solely to reflect new practice. Limit changes to those stimulated by other conditions. Note that aside from creating a NAR to qualify a heading for a radio program, the usual conditions for creating a NAR as stated in the Introduction to DCM Z1 continue to obtain.

25.5B Appendix I

Assign a uniform title for a radio program in the following situations.

1) *Same title, different resources.* Assign a uniform title to distinguish a radio program entered under a title proper from another bibliographic resource entered under that same title (*cf.* rule 25.1A). In determining a possible conflict, follow the guidelines set out in “1) The ‘catalog’ when testing for conflict” and “2) Eligible title fields for conflict” under the section headed “General” at the beginning of LCRI 25.5B.

When it is necessary to qualify a uniform title for a radio program to break a conflict, use the qualifier "(Radio program)." In such cases create a uniform title name authority record for the radio program. (Use this uniform title in all entries for the particular work; update existing records as needed to insure this uniformity.) Do not create separate name authority records for separate language versions of a particular radio program or for variant titles. Instead, treat the titles of separate language versions as variant titles and make *see* references from them as well as other variant titles on the name authority record for the radio program.

If the uniform titles of different radio programs would be the same, resolve the conflict by using the following additional qualifiers, in this order:

year first broadcast

production company or network (use the AACR2 form of the name exactly as given on the name authority record; in cases of multiple production companies, use the first one recorded in the statement of responsibility in the title and statement of responsibility area)

country of production (use the AACR2 form from the name authority record for the place minus any cataloger’s addition (*cf.* rule 24.4C1))

Change existing headings to insure, to the extent possible, synchronization between headings for different radio programs with the same title. When a preferred qualifier does not resolve a conflict, retain that qualifier and add another. This structure will preserve synchronization between the headings for different radio programs with the same title.

Bibliographic records:

```
130 0# $a Morning jazz (Radio program : 2004 : WPFW  
      (Radio station : Washington, D.C.))
```

```
130 0# $a Morning jazz (Radio program : 2004 : WWUH  
      (Radio station : West Hartford, Conn.))
```

(Illustrates that a radio station can be a production company)

2) *Comprehensive title/Individual title.* When cataloging an individual title that is part of a comprehensive title (i.e., an original broadcast series and not a publisher/distributor series that

would be treated as a series statement), such as an episode of a radio series, use as the title proper a structured combination that consists of a comprehensive title and either an individual title or a numeric designation (e.g., episode number, program number, show number) or both.

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a Hollywood radio theatre. \$n Program no. 133,
\$p Lost in the storm ...

Bibliographic record:

245 00 \$a Adventures in research. \$n No. 586, \$p The
moldy saucer ...

246 30 \$a Moldy saucer

(246 given or not based on the character of the individual title and a judgment of the usefulness of title access in that form. Illustrates that, unlike serials, a uniform title is not assigned solely to remove an initial article preceding an individual title but when one is assigned for some other reason, an initial article preceding an individual title is not retained)

Bibliographic record:

130 0# \$a American folk music (Radio program). \$n
Program no. C-21.

245 10 \$a American folk music. \$n Program no. C-21 ...

(Illustrates that when the comprehensive title conflicts with another resource, the qualifier is added after the comprehensive title. Illustrates the absence of an individual title)

Name authority record for the radio program:

130 #0 \$a American folk music (Radio program)

In the absence of a numeric designation or an individual title, the date of broadcast can be used, if available, in the form [yyyy-mm-dd].

Bibliographic record:

130 0# \$a Jack Benny program (Radio program). \$n 1946-
03-10.

245 14 \$a The Jack Benny show. \$n [1946-03-10] ...

25.5B Appendix I

Name authority record for the radio program:

130 #0 \$a Jack Benny program (Radio program)

If the comprehensive title represents a publisher/distributor series, treat as a series statement:

Bibliographic record:

245 04 \$a The Bob Hope show. \$p Bob and Bing stop feuding ...

4XX \$a Golden days of radio
(*"Golden days of radio" is a series the Armed Forces Radio and Television Service used to reissue various radio shows*)

3) *Compilations.* These are usually selected portions of a radio series. They may or may not relate to a particular season; treat them accordingly as follows:

1) for those that are a compilation of all the programs broadcast in a particular season, collocate them by using the uniform title of the work as a whole followed by the term "Season" as the standard term to denote what may be called variously "year 1," "season one," "first season," "vol. 1," "first year," etc., followed by the number of the season;

Bibliographic record

130 0# \$a American Radio Company of the Air (Radio program). \$n Season 1.
245 10 \$a Garrison Keillor's American Radio Company.
\$n The first season ...

Name authority record for the radio series:

130 #0 \$a American Radio Company of the Air (Radio program)

Caution: Do not inadvertently treat a compilation of a complete series broadcast over a short period of time as a season.

2) for selections from a particular season, use the pattern in 1) directly above and add the term “Selections”;

Bibliographic record

```
130 0# $a Shadow (Radio program). $n Season 2.
    $k Selections.
245 14 $a The Shadow. $n The best of season two ...
      (Made up example)
```

Name authority record for the radio series:

```
130 #0 $a Shadow (Radio program)
```

3) for selections from two or more seasons or for those covered by a special rubric such as “The best of ...”, use the uniform title of the work as a whole followed only by the term “Selections”; when a selection with a special rubric relates to a single season, however, use the pattern in 2) directly above.

Bibliographic record:

```
130 0# $a All things considered (Radio program).
    $k Selections.
245 14 $a The best of All things considered ...
```

Name authority record for the radio series:

```
130 #0 $a All things considered (Radio program)
```

Assigning Uniform Titles (Providing Related Work/Subject Access When Cataloging Any Resource Related to a Radio Program)⁶

In cataloging a resource related to a radio program/series (e.g., a radio script, a recording of music from a radio program/series), use a related work (cf. rule 21.28)/subject added entry to provide related work/subject access to the radio program/series. If it is necessary to distinguish a radio program/series entered under a title proper from another resource entered under that same title, add

⁶Past PCC/LC practice: PCC/LC practice for secondary access for radio programs prior to 2005 will have resulted in instances of qualification now no longer called for. Generally, continue to use such headings in main, subject, and added entries on records for items cataloged after 2004 (routinely retain name authority records created in accord with these policies although they would not necessarily be needed under current policies).

25.5B Appendix I

the qualifier “(Radio program).” In determining a possible conflict, follow the guidelines set out in “1) The ‘catalog’ when testing for conflict” and “2) Eligible title fields for conflict” under the section headed “General” at the beginning of this LCRI. If the radio program/series for which related-work/subject access is being provided is an individual title associated with a comprehensive title, e.g., an episode of a radio serial, follow also the guidelines in 2. *Comprehensive/Individual title* immediately above.

25.8. COMPLETE WORKS.

The collective uniform title "Works" is used frequently enough to make it advisable to use additions for the purposes of making these collective titles distinct, of insuring that translations file after editions in the original language, and of distinguishing between two or more editions published in the same year. To achieve these objectives, apply the following when using "Works":

1) When an item is first cataloged, add the date of publication of the first part at the end of the uniform title. If information about the first part is not available, give the earliest date known. Later, when information about the first part is available, change the date in the uniform title and update appropriate authority and bibliographic records.

Reduce the publication date to a simple four digit form that most nearly represents the publication date (of the first volume or part if more than one) given in the publication, distribution, etc., area. Convert a hyphen to a zero.

*Form in publication, distribution, etc.,
area*

Form in collective uniform title

1978	1978
c1978	1978
[1978?]	1978
[ca. 1978]	1978
1978, c1970	1978
1966 [i.e. 1965]	1965
[1966 or 1967]	1966
1978/1979	1978
1969 (1971 printing)	1969
c1942, 1973 printing	1942
[between 1906 and 1912]	1906
1394 [1974]	1974
anno XVIII [1939]	1939
1969-<1973>	1969
1970-1978	1970
<1975>-	1975
[18--]	1800
[197-]	1970
[197-?]	1970

Add the date in all cases, including translations. When making a reference from the title proper of the item (25.2E2), add the date at the end of the title proper in all cases.

2) If two editions bear the same publication date *and* it becomes necessary to refer to a particular edition in a secondary entry, add the publisher's name after the publication date in the most succinct but intelligible form. Make this addition to the uniform title of the edition(s) needing to be distinguished for secondary entry. Make changes to existing records as appropriate to insure that all

25.8

iterations of a particular title, including those on series authority records, are the same. If different editions are published in the same year by the same publisher, add an appropriate qualification to the publisher's name.

- * The following titles illustrate the application of these guidelines (examples with 800 fields
- * illustrate PCC practice):

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1902

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1904

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell
(*Bibliographic record*)

100 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell
(*Series authority record*)

800 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell ; \$v v. 1
(*Series added entry*)

800 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell ; \$v v. 2
(*Series added entry*)

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell (Eldorado ed.)
(*Bibliographic record*)

100 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell (Eldorado ed.)
(*Series authority record*)

800 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1904. \$s Lovell (Eldorado ed.)
; \$v v. 1
(*Series added entry*)

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1920

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1930
(*Bibliographic record*)

100 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1930
(*Series authority record*)

800 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$f 1930 ; \$v v. 2
(*Series added entry*)

240 10 \$a Works. \$f 1969

240 10 \$a Works. \$l German. \$f 1911

240 10 \$a Works. \$l German. \$f 1922
(*Bibliographic record*)

100 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$l German. \$f 1922
(*Series authority record*)

800 1# \$a Works. \$l German. \$f 1922 ; \$v Bd. 1
(*Series added entry*)

240 10 \$a Works. \$l German. \$f 1924. \$s Propyläen
(*Bibliographic record*)

100 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$l German. \$f 1924. \$s Propyläen
(*Series authority record*)

800 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$l German. \$f 1924. \$s Propyläen
; \$v Bd. 1
(*Series added entry*)

240 10 \$a Works. \$l German. \$f 1924. \$s Rösl
(*Bibliographic record*)

100 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$l German. \$f 1924. \$s Rösl
(*Series authority record*)

800 1# \$a ... \$t Works. \$l German. \$f 1924. \$s Rösl ; \$v
Bd. 2
(*Series added entry*)

240 10 \$a Works. \$l German. \$f 1966

240 10 \$a Works. \$l Portuguese. \$f 1944

240 10 \$a Works. \$l Spanish. \$f 1972

Composers and Writers

If a person has written both musical and literary works, apply the following:

- 1) If the person is primarily a composer, use the uniform title "Works"
 - a) for editions containing the complete musical and literary works and
 - b) for editions containing the complete musical works.

(For complete collections of the literary works alone, use the uniform title "Literary works." For partial collections of the literary works, see LCRI 25.10.)

- 2) If the person is primarily a writer, use the uniform title "Works"
 - a) for editions containing the complete literary and musical works and

b) for editions containing the complete literary works.

(For complete collections of the musical works, use the uniform title "Musical works." For partial collections of the musical works, see LCRI 25.10.)

 25.13. MANUSCRIPTS AND MANUSCRIPT GROUPS
Scope

Manuscripts and manuscript groups have dual identities: one as the physical object (the illuminations, calligraphy, binding, paper, etc., that are reproduced or discussed, which is hereafter referred to as the physical manuscript) and one as the intellectual content (the text, music, etc., contained within the physical manuscript, which is hereafter referred to as the work). Separate headings are usually required for the physical manuscript and for the work or works it contains. However, by exception, the physical manuscript and the work share the same heading *if* 1) the work has no title or is known by the same title as the physical manuscript, *and* 2) entering the work under a name heading is not appropriate.

Use rule 25.13:

1) to formulate a heading for the textual, musical, etc., content contained in a physical manuscript for use as a main, analytical, or secondary entry when the work and the physical manuscript share the same heading; *or*,

2) to formulate a heading for the physical manuscript when the heading is needed for a secondary entry or subject access. *LC practice:* See LCRI 21.30H for situations in which an added entry for the physical manuscript is needed. See *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings H 1855* for situations in which a subject heading for the physical manuscript is needed.

Choice of Heading

Rule 25.13 provides two choices for establishing the heading for a physical manuscript, which should be selected in this order of preference: 1) the name of the physical manuscript; 2) the repository designation for the physical manuscript.

Name of Physical Manuscript

Generally, the name of a physical manuscript is a phrase that contains a generic term such as “codex,” “stone,” “tablet,” or the equivalent in other languages, or a phrase that combines the name of a location (monastery, town, etc.) with a term indicative of the physical manuscript’s content, even if the name is not otherwise particularly distinctive. Consider the name of the physical manuscript to be the name used by the repository or scholars or the name found in reference sources, not a “name” devised only for the edition in hand. In determining the name of the physical manuscript, consider principally the item being cataloged if it gives a name used by the repository or scholars. If the item being cataloged does not give a name, use judgment whether to consult reference sources to find a name, since the majority of physical manuscripts are not known by a name.

```
130 #0 $a Codex Madrid I
130 #0 $a Lindisfarne Gospels
```

25.13

* If the only source is the item being cataloged and it presents variant forms of the physical
* manuscript's name, use as the heading the form found on the chief source, the form presented in
* other prominent sources, or the form found elsewhere in the item, in that order of preference.
*

* If the name of the physical manuscript changes, change the heading as appropriate when it
* is needed for current cataloging. Make a see reference (4XX) from the previous heading.
*

```
130 #0 $a Codex Leicester  
430 #0 $w nne $a Codex Hammer
```

Repository Designation

* If the name of the physical manuscript cannot be determined, use its repository designation
* as the heading. The heading consists of the current corporate name heading for the repository that
* now holds the physical manuscript (or the repository that last held the physical manuscript if the
* physical manuscript no longer exists), the term "Manuscript," and the designation in the repository.
*

```
110 2# $a British Library. $k Manuscript. $n  
Additional 43487
```

* If the name of the repository changes, the physical manuscript is moved to a different
* repository, or the designation within the repository changes, change the heading as appropriate when
* it is needed for current cataloging. Make a see reference (4XX) from the previous heading.
*

```
110 2# $a British Library. $k Manuscript. $n  
Additional 43487  
410 2# $a British Museum. $k Manuscript. $n Additional  
43487
```

(Designation in former repository)

* If the item being cataloged presents variant forms of the physical manuscript's repository
* designation, use as the heading the form found on the chief source, the form presented in other
* prominent sources, the form found elsewhere in the item, or the form appearing most frequently in
* reference sources, in that order of preference. *LC practice:* For the designation in the repository,
* follow the pattern that has been established in the LC/NAF for the particular repository. If no pattern
* exists, use the form found on the item being cataloged or in reference sources.
*

Parts of Physical Manuscripts in Different Repositories

* If a physical manuscript has become divided into multiple parts, with the parts located in
* different repositories, establish the heading for each part separately using the instructions above.
* Connect the headings with see-also (5XX) references.
*

Headings for Works that Are Parts of Manuscripts

Do not use the heading for a physical manuscript in an analytical added entry. Do not use the form subheading “Selections” with headings for physical manuscripts. To formulate analytical and other secondary entries for the works contained in a physical manuscript, follow the appropriate rules in AACR 2, chapter 25, and in LCRI 21.30M. If other rules in AACR 2 chapter 25 do not provide a uniform title (i.e., the title of the work is the same string as the name of the physical manuscript per rule 25.13), use the form subheading “Selections” for extracts from the work.

730 02 \$a Codex Ixtlilxochitl. \$k Selections
(The physical manuscript and the work it contains share the same heading)

Authority Records

General

To promote consistency among shared authority files, create an authority record for the heading for the physical manuscript in all cases. (This is an exception to the policy given in DCM Z1.) *LC practice:* Do not establish the separate heading for the work unless it is needed to catalog the item in hand.

Add a 667 note to the authority record for the physical manuscript to explain the relationship between the heading for the physical manuscript and the heading for the work, e.g.:

667 ## \$a Heading is for the physical manuscript; for the work contained in the physical manuscript, see [LCCN of authority record for work]
(Heading for the work is already established or is being established concurrently with the heading for the physical manuscript)

667 ## \$a Heading for the physical manuscript; for the work contained in the physical manuscript, use the heading for the individual work.
(Heading for the work is not already established and there is no need to establish it for the item in hand)

667 ## \$a Use this heading for both the physical manuscript and the work it contains
(The physical manuscript and the work it contains can share the same heading)

References When Heading Is the Name of the Physical Manuscript

Make references as appropriate from:

- 1) the current and any former repository designations if known, following the

25.13

* instructions under *Repository Designation* above;

* 2) the name of the physical manuscript as though it were a repository designation
* (*exceptionally*, code such phrases as \$n even though they lack any indication of sequencing in order
* to facilitate indexing in many automated catalogs);

* 3) variant names and/or designations found in the item being cataloged and in reference
* sources.

* 130 #0 \$a Codex Peresianus

* 410 2# \$a Bibliothèque nationale de France. \$k
* Manuscript. \$n Mexicain 386

* (*Repository designation*)

* 410 2# \$a Bibliothèque nationale (France). \$k
* Manuscript. \$n Mexicain 386

* (*Repository designation & former name of repository*)

* 410 2# \$a Bibliothèque nationale de France. \$k
* Manuscript. \$n Mexicain 2

* (*Former repository designation*)

* 410 2# \$a Bibliothèque nationale (France). \$k
* Manuscript. \$n Mexicain 2

* (*Former repository designation & former name of repository*)

* 410 2# \$a Bibliothèque national de France. \$k
* Manuscript. \$n Codex Peresianus

* (*Name as if repository designation. Note exceptional coding
* of a phrase lacking any indication of sequencing as \$n to
* facilitate indexing in many automated catalogs*)

* 430 #0 \$a Codex de Pérez

* (*Variant name in item being cataloged*)

* 430 #0 \$a Codex Pérez (Pre-Hispanic Mayan ms.)

* (*Variant name in reference source, qualified to resolve
* conflict with heading Codex Pérez*)

References When Heading Is the Repository Designation

* Make references from all forms of current and former repository designations found on the
* item being cataloged and in reference sources consulted.

110 2# \$a British Library. \$k Manuscript. \$n Additional
43487

410 2# \$a British Library. \$k Manuscript. \$n Add. ms.
43487

(Variant of repository designation)

410 2# \$a British Museum. \$k Manuscript. \$n Additional
43487

(Designation in former repository)

667 ## \$a Heading is for the physical manuscript; for
the work in the physical manuscript, use the
heading for the individual work.

110 2# \$a Trinity College (Dublin, Ireland). \$b Library.
\$k Manuscript. \$n 164

410 2# \$a Trinity College (Dublin, Ireland). \$b
Library. \$k Manuscript. \$n B.2.11

(Former repository designation)

667 ## \$a Heading for the physical manuscript; for the
work contained in the physical manuscript, use
the heading for the individual work

With the exception of Bible, Catholic Church Liturgy, etc., Manuscripts (see below), do not connect the headings for physical manuscripts and the works they contain with see-also (5XX) references.

Conflicts

Consult AACR2 25.5B and LCRI 25.5B to resolve conflicts.

Bible, Catholic Church Liturgy, etc., Manuscripts

Headings for the work contained in physical manuscripts such as those of the Bible (AACR2 25.18A12 a)) or Catholic Church liturgy (AACR2 25.22B) may include the name of the physical manuscript or its repository designation as part of the uniform title heading for the work. This is a separate heading from the heading for the physical manuscript. For example:

130 #0 \$a Bamberger Psalter

(The heading for the physical manuscript)

110 2# \$a Catholic Church. \$t Psalter (Ms. Bamberger
Psalter)

*(The heading for the work contained in the Bamberger
Psalter. Note addition of "Ms." to the name of the physical
manuscript per AACR2 25.22B)*

25.13

* 110 1# \$a Bodleian Library. \$k Manuscript. \$n Auct. E.
* Infra 1 & 2

* *(The heading for the physical manuscript)*

* 130 #0 \$a Bible. \$l Latin. \$s Bodleian Library. \$k
* Manuscript. \$n Auct. E. Infra 1 & 2

* *(The heading for the work contained in the physical
* manuscript)*

* *LC practice:* The heading for the work contained in the physical manuscript does not need
* to be established until it is used. (For example, when illuminations from a physical manuscript are
* published separately, the heading for the work they illuminate is generally not needed.) When the
* heading for the work is established, however, make a 667 note to clarify the relationship between
* the heading for the work and the heading for the physical manuscript, e.g.:

* 667 ## \$a Heading represents the textual [and/or
* musical, etc.] content of the physical
* manuscript; for publications limited to its
* decoration or to discussion of its non-textual
* aspects, use [LCCN of authority record for the
* manuscript]

* Relate the two headings with see-also (5XX) references.

25.34B1. SELECTIONS.

Ordinarily do not add a date of publication, etc., to the uniform title "Selections" when it is used for collections of musical works by one composer.

However, when necessary (e.g., for *PCC practice* to keep series added entries for an analyzable multipart item together and separate them from other collections with the same uniform title), add a qualifier according to the fourth and fifth paragraphs of LCRI 25.8-25.11 to the uniform title "Selections."

*

490 1 \$a Edition John Cage
800 1 \$a Cage, John. \$t Selections (Wergo)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

26.4B. SEE REFERENCES.

Misattributed Musical Works

When applying the option in LCRI 21.4C1 to make a name-uniform title reference from the erroneously or fictitiously attributed musical work in place of the added entry for the erroneously or fictitiously attributed composer alone, construct the reference in the form that the uniform title would have if the work were in fact by the attributed composer.

```
100 1# $a Cannabich, Christian, $d 1731-1798. $t
      Concertos, $m violin, string orchestra, $r
      B♭ major
400 1# $a Haydn, Joseph, $d 1732-1809. $t Concertos,
      $m violin, string orchestra, $n H. VIIa, 2,
      $r B♭ major
```

When appropriate, make additional name-title references from the heading for the attributed composer and other titles under which the work has been published as a work of the attributed composer.

```
100 1# $a Mozart, Leopold, $d 1719-1787. $t Cassation,
      $m orchestra, $r C major. $k Selections
400 1# $a Haydn, Joseph, $d 1732-1809. $t
      Berchtolsgadener Sinfonie
400 1# $a Haydn, Joseph, $d 1732-1809. $t Toy symphony
```

Treaties, Etc.

1) *Form of references.* In general, construct a reference in the same form in which it would be constructed if chosen as the main entry heading.

a) *All treaties, etc.* (except agreements falling under 21.35B1, categories c) and d), and 21.35D)

Refer from

(1) *Different names or variants of the name*¹

¹Distinguish between the name of a treaty, etc., and a bibliographic title, including subtitle, that may include the name of the treaty, etc. (The latter is traced as a title added entry on the bibliographic record.)

- 130 #0 \$a Berne Convention for the Protection of
Literary and Artistic Works \$d (1971)
(An agreement between numerous governments)
- 430 #0 \$a International Convention Further Revising
the Berne Convention for the Protection of
Literary and Artistic Works of September 9,
1886 \$d (1971)
- 430 #0 \$a Convention de Berne pour la protection des
oeuvres littéraires et artistiques \$d (1971)
- 110 1# \$a Germany. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g Soviet Union,
‡\$ 1939 Aug. 23
(An agreement between two governments)
- 430 #0 \$a Molotov-Ribbentrop Pact \$d (1939)
- 430 #0 \$a Pakt Molotova-Ribbentropa \$d (1939)
- 430 #0 \$a Hitler-Stalin Pact \$d (1939)
- 110 1\$ #a France. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1718 Apr. 21
*(An agreement between the Holy Roman Empire, France, and
the United Provinces of Netherlands)*
- 430 #0 \$a Convention Between the Emperor, France, and
the Netherlands for the Reciprocal Return of
Deserters \$d (1718)

(2) *Inverted form.* Refer from the inverted form of the name in English, if a treaty, etc., has become known by the locale where it was signed, etc., or if several related treaties, etc., have become known by the name of a locale. If a treaty, etc., has become known by several names (e.g., Treaty of ...; Peace of ...) generally make only a single inverted reference, choosing the name under which it is established, or, if entered under a signatory, the form under which it is likely best known.

- 130 #0 \$a Treaty of Bucharest \$d (1913)
(An agreement between four governments)
- 430 #0 \$a Bucharest, Treaty of \$d (1913)
- 110 1# \$a Great Britain. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g United
States, \$d 1814 Dec. 24
(An agreement between two governments)
- 430 #0 \$a Ghent, Treaty of \$d (1814)
- 130 #0 \$a Treaty of Utrecht \$d (1713)
(Collective name for several treaties)
- 430 #0 \$a Utrecht, Treaty of \$d (1713)

(3) *AACR1 form of the heading for a treaty, etc., that was signed during the*

years 1967-1980 and originally established within that period (linking reference)²
 In general, follow the provisions of LCRI 26 Linking references 1).

```
110 1# $a Pakistan. $t Treaties, etc. $g United
      States, $d 1972 June 15
410 1# $w nnaa $a United States. $†t Treaties, etc. $g
```

²No linking reference is made from the heading of a treaty, etc., that was originally established under the ALA rules (as generally no one-to-one relationship exists between an ALA heading and an AACR heading) including those for treaties signed before 1967 but cataloged during the years 1967-1980, which the Library of Congress continued to catalog under the ALA rules (see *Cataloging Service*, bulletin 80 (April 1967)). The reference is not made because

1) Under the ALA rules (ALA 88) single treaties were entered under the party named first in the chief source, with the form subheading "Treaties, etc.," followed by the inclusive dates of administration and the name of the executive incumbent in the year of signing. (For instance, if the Treaty of Portsmouth, signed in 1905, were presented in the publication as a treaty between Japan and Russia, the main entry heading for the bibliographic record would be in the form "Japan. Treaties, etc., 1867-1912 (Mutsuhito)," with an added entry in the form "Russia. Treaties, etc., 1894-1917 (Nicholas II)." If the publication presented the treaty as one between Russia and Japan, the main and added entry headings were reversed.) Therefore, treaties were identified by groups, not individually. A single name authority record was prepared for all treaties of a government signed during a specific period, and all bibliographic records, related or unrelated, of such a period had identical headings, if the publications presented the signatory as the participant named first.

To complicate matters further, for certain governments, such as those of the British dominions, the subheading was followed only by the year of signature.

2) Under the ALA rule for multilateral treaties (88B), a treaty that was the product of an international conference was entered under the name of the conference, or if the conference was unnamed, under the body holding the meeting. (A simple see also reference to show the relationship is now made instead. See LCRI 26.4C.)

3) Under the ALA rules for multilateral treaties, a treaty between member countries within an international intergovernmental body was entered under the name of the body. (A simple see also reference is now made instead. See LCRI 26.4C.)

It is also helpful to remember that under the AACR1 rules a peace treaty, regardless of the number of signatories, was entered under the name by which it is known (AACR1, 25A2).

Pakistan, \$d June 15, 1972³

- 130 #0 \$a Berne Convention for the Protection of
Literary and Artistic Works \$d (1971)
- 430 #0 \$w nnaa \$a Berne convention for the protection
of literary and artistic works. \$k Revision,
1971

Note: Additional access by subject heading under ALA rules. Under the ALA rules an additional access point was given for a treaty, etc., that is commonly known by the locale where it was signed, etc. This access was a subject access and was given in the form of the name of the locale, followed by the phrase *Treaty of*, and the year of signing, etc. (This practice was continued in LC until the adoption of AACR2.) It is therefore necessary to distinguish between a valid inverted reference and that of a subject heading that was assigned in addition. Such a subject heading does not constitute a pre-AACR2 form of heading and should not be traced as such. Instead give a note: Prior to AACR2 represented also by the subject heading: ... Cancel such a heading still located in the subject headings file at the time of establishing the heading in the names file.

- 110 1# \$a Japan. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g Russia, \$d 1905
Sept. 5
- 667 ## \$a Prior to AACR2 represented also by the
subject heading: Portsmouth, Treaty of, 1905

Similarly, during the period of application of the ALA rules to treaties, etc., a subject heading was also assigned to a treaty, etc., that is popularly known by the name of the negotiator(s), signer(s), etc. As above, document this information by adding an appropriate note.

- 110 1# \$a Mexico. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g United States,
\$d 1853 Dec. 30
- 667 ## \$a Prior to AACR 2 represented also by the
subject heading: Gadsden treaty, 1853

b) *Treaties, etc. between two or three governments* (21.35A1, 25.16B1). Refer from the name(s) of the government(s) not chosen as the main entry heading, followed by the uniform title *Treaties, etc.*, and the date (year month day).

- 110 1# \$a Great Britain. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g United
States, \$d 1814 Dec. 24
(*An agreement between two governments*)
- 410 1# \$a United States. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g Great
Britain, \$d 1814 Dec. 24

³When searching the database for the pre-AACR2 heading, other editions, etc., it is useful to bear in mind that previous to AACR2 "Treaties, etc." constituted a subheading, not a uniform title.

- 110 1# \$a France. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1718 Apr. 21
(An agreement between three governments)
- 410 1# \$a Holy Roman Empire. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1718
 Apr. 21
- 410 1# \$a United Provinces of the Netherlands. \$t
 Treaties, etc. \$d 1718 Apr. 21

c) *Treaties, etc. between four or more governments* (21.35A2, 25.16B2). Refer from the name of the government, followed by the uniform title *Treaties, etc.*, and the date (year month day) in the following cases:

- (1) home government (i.e., the government of the cataloging agency) if it is a signatory
- (2) government publishing the text of the treaty, if it is a signatory
- (3) government named first in the chief source of information if it is neither the home government nor the publishing government, but is a signatory.

- 130 #0 \$a Customs Convention on the Temporary
 Importation of Professional Equipment \$d
 (1961)
(Ca. fifty signatories)
- 410 1# \$a United States. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1961
 June 8
*(Signatory + home government + government publishing an
 edition of the text in the Library's collections)*
- 410 1# \$a Great Britain. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1961
 June 8
*(Signatory + government publishing an edition of the text in
 the Library's collections)*
- 410 1# \$a Ireland. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1961 June 8
*(Signatory + government publishing an edition of the text in
 the Library's collections)*

Refer from the original signatories, followed by the uniform title *Treaties, etc.*, and the date (year month day) when the treaty, etc., was originally a bilateral or trilateral one but to which other countries acceded either at the time of signing or at a later date.

- 130 #0 \$a Treaty of Paris \$d (1763)
*(Signatories: France, Spain, and Great Britain; acceded to by
 Portugal at the time of signing)*
- 410 1# \$a France. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1763 Feb. 10
- 410 1# \$a Great Britain. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1763
 Feb. 10
- 410 1# \$a Spain. \$t Treaties, etc. \$d 1763 Feb. 10

26.4B

- 130 #0 \$a Anti-Comintern Pact \$d (1936)
(*Signatories: Germany and Japan; subscribed to by Italy in 1937 and by several other countries before and during WWII*)
- 410 1# \$a Germany. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g Japan, \$d 1936
Nov. 25
- 410 1# \$a Japan. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g Germany, \$d 1936
Nov. 25

d) *Agreements contracted by international intergovernmental bodies* (21.35B1)⁴. For categories 1) and 2), footnote 4, i.e., for agreements, etc., between parties all of which are empowered to make treaties, etc., follow guidelines in b) and c) above and construct the references accordingly.

- 110 1# \$a International Development Association. \$t
Treaties, etc. \$g Kenya, \$d 1980 Mar. 12
- 410 1# \$a Kenya. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g International
Development Association, \$d 1980 Mar. 12
- 110 1# \$a United Nations. \$t Treaties, etc. \$g World
Intellectual Property Organization, \$d 1975
Jan. 21
- 410 1# \$a World Intellectual Property Organization. \$t
Treaties, etc. \$g United Nations, \$d 1975
Jan. 21

When the uniform title *Treaties, etc.*, is inappropriate (i.e., when one of the signatories is a government below the national level, or is a corporate body other than a national government, or is a corporate body other than an international intergovernmental body (see categories 3) and 4), footnote 4,)) make added entries instead of references. Do not add a uniform title.

e) *Other agreements involving jurisdictions, and agreements between a government at any level, other than international intergovernmental bodies, and a non-governmental corporate body.* Make added entries instead of references in these cases. See 21.35D and 21.6C.

⁴An agreement, etc., of an international intergovernmental body can be contracted between the body and

- 1) other international intergovernmental bodies, *or*
- 2) national governments, *or*
- 3) jurisdictions other than national governments, *or*
- 4) other corporate bodies.

f) *Collections of treaties, etc.*⁵

(1) *Collections of treaties, etc., contracted between two parties.* For each of the categories a)-e) listed above (covering single treaties, etc.), a separate authority record is made for each treaty, etc., for the purpose of tracing references from the variant forms of the uniform title. However, in the case of collections of treaties, etc., contracted between two parties, a single authority record serves to cover all collections between the two given parties and is made only for the purpose of referring from the party not chosen as the main entry heading, followed by the uniform title *Treaties, etc.*, and the name of the party chosen as the main entry heading. (Each bibliographic title of the collection is traced as a title added entry on the appropriate bibliographic record, not on the name authority record.)

```
110 1# $a Great Britain. $t Treaties, etc. $g United
      States
410 1# $a United States. $t Treaties, etc. $g Great
      Britain
```

(2) *Collections of treaties, etc. contracted between one party and two or more other parties.* Generally, no authority record is necessary. (The bibliographic title of each collection is given as a title added entry on the appropriate bibliographic record.)

⁵Excluded from consideration are serials and monographic series. For these the heading is constructed according to LCRI 25.5B. *PCC practice*: For series the appropriate references are traced on the series authority record. *

```
110 1# $a Australia. $t Treaties, etc. (Australian treaty
      series)
```

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

26.5A. REFERENCES TO ADDED ENTRIES FOR SERIES AND SERIALS. SERIES.**TABLE OF CONTENTS****Introduction****General Guidelines for See References****Types of See References**

- 1) Alternative forms not selected as series heading
 - a) Heading is uniform title
 - (1) Name/title proper reference
 - (2) Title proper reference
 - b) Heading is name/title proper
 - (1) Title proper reference
 - (2) Name/title proper reference for another person/body
 - c) Heading is name/uniform title
 - (1) Title proper reference
 - (2) Name/title proper reference
 - (3) Name/title proper reference for another person/body
- 2) Variants of title proper in another source in same/another issue
 - a) Parallel titles
 - b) Other titles
- 3) Partial titles
 - a) Typographical prominence
 - b) Subseries or section title
 - c) Generic noun
 - d) Person's forename, initial, or title
- 4) Variations in title proper that are not “major changes”
- 5) Fluctuating titles
 - a) Different languages
 - b) Regular pattern

26.5A

- 6) Other situations
 - a) Substitutions
 - b) Other title information
 - c) Title of series/serial
 - d) Multipart item
 - e) Romanization/word division
 - f) Change in non-corporate body parenthetical qualifier
 - g) Introductory words to title proper
 - h) Correction of title proper of a serial or an integrating resource
 - i) Pre-AACR2 form of name
 - j) Miscellaneous

General Guidelines for See Also References

See Also References by Category of Series Authority Record

- 1) Monographic series and other serials
 - 2) Multipart items
 - 3) Series-like phrases
-

Introduction

* *LC practice:*

*

* LC has announced a change in policy applying to all bibliographic resources (monographs,
* serials, and integrating resources) in series. As of June 1, 2006, LC analyzes and classifies separately
* all parts of monographic series and of multipart monographs with the exception of those categories
* listed in LCRI 13.3. As of the same date, LC does not give “controlled” access points for series in new
* LC original cataloging (CIP and non-CIP) bibliographic records, does not update series access points
* in existing bibliographic records, and does not consult, make, or update series authority records.
* (Exception for consulting SARS: see LCRI 25.5B for determining “conflict.”) LC will “pass through”
* the series information already in bibliographic records used by LC as copy (CIP/LC partner records,
* PCC records, and non-PCC (including Casalini) records).

* *PCC practice:*

*

* The PCC Policy Committee has announced that the PCC series policy remains unchanged. As
* of June 1, 2006, this LCRI applies to PCC practice only.

Although rule 26.5A addresses only see references for traced series, this LCRI contains guidelines for see *and* see also references on series authority records for *all* categories represented

by such authority records (monographic series, other serials, multipart items, series-like phrases) *regardless* of local treatment decisions concerning analysis, classification, and tracing practices. Unless a specific category is mentioned, the word "series" in this LCRI applies to all four categories.

N.B.: Full reference structure is *not* given for each example.

If an added entry is needed for a series in a bibliographic record, or if the heading for a series is needed as part of a heading/reference in a name/series authority record, use the heading on the series' own AACR2 bibliographic record or authority record.

General Guidelines for See References

In title references (subfield \$a, subfield \$n, and subfield \$p) and title portions of name/title references, omit an initial article unless it is to be filed on.

Add a qualifier to a reference if it conflicts with the heading of another publication according to the guidelines in LCRI 25.5B.

Add the qualifier "(Series)" to a reference if it is identical to a personal or corporate (including geographic) name (cf. LCRI 25.5B).

Do *not* break a conflict between see references.

When using an existing series authority record, add any appropriate references not already in the record. Do *not* delete references made according to earlier policies.

Types of See References

1) *Alternative forms not selected as series heading*

a) *Heading is uniform title*

(1) Give a name/title proper reference for the situations listed below. If the heading includes a parenthetical qualifier, do *not* include that qualifier when recording the title proper in the reference.

(a) when a body responsible for the series is a noncommercial one or is a commercial one whose responsibility extends beyond that of merely publishing the series; in this context, consider university presses as "commercial";

```
130 #0 $a Environmental sciences and application
410 2# $a United Nations Institute for Training and
      Research. $t Environmental sciences and
      application
```

26.5A

130 #0 \$a Langues à l'INALCO
410 2# \$a Insitut national des langues et civilisations
orientales. \$t Langues à l'INALCO

130 #0 \$a Studies in education (London, England)
410 2# \$a University of London. \$b Institute of
Education. \$t Studies in education

130 #0 \$a Occasional paper (Mendocino Academy of
Science)
410 2# \$a Mendocino Academy of Science. \$t Occasional
paper

(b) when the name, an initialism/acronym, or part of the name of a corporate body is in the series title even if that body is not responsible for the series; however, do not make the reference if the body is a commercial publisher responsible only for publishing the series;

130 #0 \$a Harvard historical monographs
410 2# \$a Harvard University. \$t Harvard historical
monographs
410 2# \$a Harvard University. \$b Dept. of History. \$t
Harvard historical monographs

(Department of History is responsible for the series)

(c) when the title of a *numbered* series consists solely of a form of a corporate body's name whether or not that form of name is identical with the name of the corporate body given as the heading on the body's name authority record.

130 #0 \$a Suffolk Records Society (Series)
410 2# \$a Suffolk Records Society. \$t Suffolk Records
Society

130 #0 \$a HAZ (Series)
410 2# \$a Historical Association of Zambia. \$t HAZ

130 #0 \$a Institut sotsialististicheskogo prava
(Series)
410 2# \$a Institute on Socialist Law. \$t Institut
sotsialististicheskogo prava

130 #0 \$a University of Warsaw, Institute of
Psychology (Series)
410 2# \$a Uniwersytet Warszawski. \$b Instytut
Psychologii. \$t University of Warsaw, Institute
of Psychology

(2) Give a reference from title proper when it differs from the uniform title except when the difference is the addition of a language name or a parenthetical qualifier.

130 #0 \$a EDI policy seminar report. \$l Spanish
430 #0 \$a Informe de un seminario de política del IDE

130 #0 \$a Information (Zurich, Switzerland). \$l French
(reference not given from title proper in English: Information)

130 #0 \$a Skrifter (Dansk folkemindesamling)
(reference not given from title proper: Skrifter)

b) *Heading is name/title proper*

(1) Give a reference from title proper.

110 2# \$a Library of Congress. \$b Manuscript Division.
\$t Registers of papers in the Manuscript
Division of the Library of Congress
430 #0 \$a Registers of papers in the Manuscript
Division of the Library of Congress

100 1# \$a Breuil, Henri, \$d 1877-1961. \$t Rock
paintings of southern Africa
430 #0 \$a Rock paintings of southern Africa

(2) Give a reference from name/title proper for another person or corporate body sharing responsibility for the series. (Generally, do not give a reference from a body when the heading is under a personal name.)

100 1# \$a Brenner, Barbara. \$t Hide and seek science
400 1# \$a Chardiet, Bernice. \$t Hide and seek science

c) *Heading is name/uniform title*

(1) Generally, give a reference from title proper.

100 1# \$a James, Henry, \$d 1811-1882. \$t Selections. \$f
1983
430 #0 \$a Selected works of Henry James, Sr. \$f 1983

26.5A

100 1# \$a Sterne, Laurence, \$d 1713-1768. \$t Works. \$f 1978
430 #0 \$a Florida edition of the works of Laurence Sterne. \$f 1978

(2) Generally, give a reference from name/title proper when the title proper differs from the uniform title except when the difference is the addition of a language name, a date, or a parenthetical qualifier.

100 1# \$a James, Henry, \$d 1811-1882. \$t Selections. \$f 1983
430 #0 \$a Selected works of Henry James, Sr. \$f 1983
400 1# \$a James, Henry, \$d 1811-1882. \$t Selected works of Henry James, Sr. \$f 1983

100 1# \$a Sterne, Laurence, \$d 1713-1768. \$t Works. \$f 1978
430 #0 \$a Florida edition of the works of Laurence Sterne. \$f 1978
400 1# \$a Sterne, Laurence, \$d 1713-1768. \$t Florida edition of the works of Laurence Sterne. \$f 1978

(3) Give a reference from name/title proper for another person or corporate body sharing responsibility for the series. (Generally, do not give a reference from a body when the heading is under a personal name.)

100 1# \$a Landau, L. D. \$q (Lev Davidovich), \$d 1908-1968. \$t Teoreticheskaia fizika
400 1# \$a Lifshits, E. M. \$q (Evgenii Mikhailovich), \$d 1908- \$t Teoreticheskaia fizika

2) Variants of title proper in another source in same/another issue

Give a reference from a variant title found in the same item or found in another item with the same series title proper. Construct the reference in the same form, title or name/title, that would be used as the heading; generally, do not give references that are variations of these references.

a) *Parallel titles.* Give references for all parallel titles. If the heading is a main series and subseries, use the same language, when present, for all parts of the parallel main series/parallel subseries reference(s).

130 #0 \$a Befolkningsstatistik og sociologisk statistik
 430 #0 \$a Bevölkerungs- und Sozialstatistik
 430 #0 \$a Demographic and social statistics
 430 #0 \$a Statistiques démographiques et sociales
 430 #0 \$a Statistiche demografiche e sociali
 430 #0 \$a Sociale en bevolkingsstatistiek

130 #0 \$a Europäische Hochschulschriften. \$n Reihe XXV,
 \$p Forst- und Holzwirtschaft
 430 #0 \$a Publications universitaires européennes. \$n
 Série XXV, \$p Sciences forestières
 430 #0 \$a European university studies. \$n Series XXV, \$p
 Forestry and forest products

b) *Other titles.* If important for access to the heading, give a reference from another form of the series title proper found on another source (e.g., on cover, on spine, on map panel, on label) of the same item or on another source of another item having the same series title proper.

130 #0 \$a Composers series (Contemporary Records (Firm))
 430 #0 \$a Contemporary composers series
 (Composers series was form on label; Contemporary
 composers series was form on container for same item)

130 #0 \$a Mathematical chemistry
 430 #0 \$a Mathematical chemistry series
 (Mathematical chemistry was form on ser. t.p.; Mathematical
 chemistry series was form on cover)

130 #0 \$a Historical geography research series
 430 #0 \$a Research paper series (Institute of British
 Geographers. Historical Geography Research
 Group)
 (Later issue with same series title proper on t.p. had cover p.
 3 title: Research paper series)

3) *Partial titles*

Construct the reference in the form, title or name/title, that would be used as the heading; generally, do not give references that are variations of these references.

a) *Typographical prominence.* Give a reference when part of the series title is given typographical prominence.

26.5A

130 #0 \$a Springer proceedings in physics

430 #0 \$a Proceedings in physics

(On source "Springer" appears on one line and "proceedings in physics" on another line; other sources in item indicate title begins with "Springer")

b) *Subseries or section title.* Give a reference from the subseries or section title unless that title is dependent on the main/common title or is misleading without that title. Do not include a preceding designation in the reference.

130 #0 \$a Petite bibliothèque. \$n Série C, \$p Science récréative

430 #0 \$a Science récréative

130 #0 \$a Soviet scientific reviews supplement series. \$p Physiology and general biology

430 #0 \$a Physiology and general biology

130 #0 \$a Contributions in political science. \$p Soviet and American studies on the Third World

430 #0 \$a Soviet and American studies on the Third World

c) *Generic noun.* Give a reference from the series title or subseries/section title omitting the introductory generic noun (e.g., Serie, Collection, Schriftenreihe) when that noun is followed by a noun or noun phrase. If the partial title reference would consist only of a proper name, add the qualifier "(Series)" to that reference.

130 #0 \$a Schriftenreihe Christliche Perspektiven im Sport

430 #0 \$a Christliche Perspektiven im Sport

130 #0 \$a Colección Documentos (Universidad Nacional del Litoral)

430 #0 \$a Documentos (Universidad Nacional del Litoral)

130 #0 \$a Coleção "Paulo Freire"

430 #0 \$a Paulo Freire (Series)

d) *Person's forename, initial, or title.* When the series title begins with a person's forename(s), initial(s), or title, give a reference

from the surname and the remainder of the title;

from the forename(s) and/or initial(s) and surname and remainder of the title.

130 #0 \$a Dr. Leonard P. Schultz ichthyological reprint
 430 #0 \$a Schultz ichthyological reprint
 430 #0 \$a Leonard P. Schultz ichthyological reprint

4) *Variations in title proper that are not "major changes" (applies only to monographic series, other serials, and series-like phrases)*

When the title proper or series-like phrase found on an earlier or later issue differs from the form used in the heading, give a *see* reference from the earlier/later form if the difference does not constitute a major change (cf. AACR2 21.2C and LCRI 21.2C). Construct the reference in the form, title or name/title, that would be used as the heading; generally, do not give references that are variations of these references.

130 #0 \$a Veröffentlichungen des Kölnischen
 Geschichtsvereins e.V.
 430 #0 \$a Veröffentlichung des Kölnischen
 Geschichtsvereins e.V.
*(later issue had title: Veröffentlichung des Kölnischen
 Geschichtsvereins e.V.; singular/plural change isn't a major
 change)*

130 #0 \$a Bulletin (Southern Humanities Conference)
 430 #0 \$a Bulletin of the Southern Humanities Conference
*(later issues had title: Bulletin of the Southern Humanities
 Conference; same body's name added to or subtracted from
 the title isn't a major change)*

130 #0 \$a Wiley series in psychology of crime, policing,
 and law
 430 #0 \$a Wiley series in the psychology of crime,
 policing, and law
*(later issue had title: Wiley series in the psychology of crime,
 policing, and law; addition/omission of article isn't a major
 change)*

130 #0 \$a Ankara Üniversitesi Hukuk Fakültesi
 yayınları. \$p Döner sermaye yayınları
 430 #0 \$a Ankara Üniversitesi Hukuk Fakültesi
 yayınları. \$p AÜHF döner sermaye yayınları
*(later issue had title: Ankara Üniversitesi Hukuk Fakültesi
 yayınları. AÜHF döner sermaye yayınları; addition of body's
 initialism isn't a major change)*

130 #0 \$a Seriiâ "Bibliofil'skie redkosti"
 430 #0 \$a Bibliofil'skie redkosti
(addition/deletion of type of resource isn't a major change)

26.5A

5) *Fluctuating titles*

a) *Different languages.* If the language of the numbered monographic series title proper on later issues varies according to the language of the text, give a reference from the series title proper in the other language(s). (Cf. LCRI 21.2C.) However, if there are parallel editions in different languages, establish separate headings (cf. LCRI 1.6).

```
130 #0 $a Taschenbücher zur Musikwissenschaft
430 #0 $a Pocketbooks of musicology
```

b) *Regular pattern.* If the title proper on later issues of a monographic series varies according to a regular pattern, give a reference from that later title.

6) *Other situations*

a) *Substitutions.* Use judgment when deciding whether a reference that is a modification of the form used in the heading (spelled out form for an abbreviation, word for symbol, word for numeral, arabic numeral for roman numeral, two words for compound word, initialism without periods for initialism with periods, etc.) is appropriate. Consider whether users might expect that form to have been the established form and whether the substitution would occur in the first five words. Construct the reference in the form, title or name/title, that would be used as the heading; generally, do not give references that are variations of these references.

```
130 #0 $a Mathématiques & applications
430 #0 $a Mathématiques et applications

130 #0 $a Advances in colour chemistry series
430 #0 $a Advances in color chemistry series

130 #0 $a Database search aids
430 $0 $a Data base search aids
```

b) *Other title information.* Give a reference from the other title information when it could be construed as the series title proper or subseries title. When an acronym or initialism of the title proper of a serial or an integrating resource is present (cf. AACR2 12.1B2), give a reference from the acronym or initialism.

```
130 #0 $a Worldly philosophy
430 #0 $a Studies at the intersection of philosophy and
    economics
    (Later issue had series subtitle: Studies at the intersection of
    philosophy and economics)

130 #0 $a Österreichische Schriftenreihe zum gewerblichen
    Rechtsschutz, Urheber- und Medienrecht
430 #0 $a ÖSGRUM
```

c) *Title of series/serial.*

Give a reference from the name of the main series (in its AACR2 form) and subseries when a subseries is not entered subordinately to the main series (cf. LCRI 1.6H).

```
130 #0 $a De signo
430 #0 $a Collana Sapiens. $p De signo
```

(Subseries De signo is not entered subordinately to the main series; no source in preliminaries or publisher's listing in item has both main series title Collana Sapiens and subseries title)

Give a reference from the name of the serial (in its AACR2 form) and title of series when the name of a serial is contained in the series title proper.

```
130 #0 $a Quaderni della Rivista italiana di musicologia
430 #0 $a Rivista italiana di musicologia. $p Quaderni
      della Rivista italiana di musicologia
```

(Rivista italiana di musicologia is a separately published serial)

d) *Multipart item: change of title or change in person or body responsible.* If the title proper changes (AACR2 21.2A1), give a reference from the later title. If the person or body responsible for the multipart item changes (AACR2 21.3A2), give a name/title proper reference from the later person or body.

e) *Romanization/word division.* Give a reference from a form representing another romanization or word division policy.

```
130 #0 $a Jibi inkoka rinsho
430 #0 $a Jibiinkoka rinsho
```

f) *Change in parenthetical qualifier not requiring a new record.* If there is a change in parenthetical qualifier in the series heading and a new record is not required (cf. LCRI 25.5B), give a reference from the series title proper and the changed qualifier if it would help in identification.

```
130 #0 $a Wissenschaftliche Reihe (Husum, Schleswig-
      Holstein, Germany)
430 #0 $a Wissenschaftliche Reihe (Nienburg, Germany)
```

g) *Introductory words to title proper.* If introductory words to the title proper were not transcribed as part of the title proper in the heading (1.1B1), give a reference from the title including those words.

26.5A

130 #0 \$a Easy handcrafts series
430 #0 \$a Scandinavian heritage presents easy handcrafts series

h) *Correction of title proper of a serial or an integrating resource.* If the title proper in the heading has been transcribed in a corrected form (cf. AACR2 12.0F, 12.1B1), give a reference for the title as it appears on the serial or integrating resource.

130 #0 \$a Studies in American art
430 #0 \$a Studies in Amerrican art

i) *Pre-AACR2 form of heading.* Optionally, include information about the pre-AACR2 form of heading in the series authority record. If there is a one-to-one relationship, give a reference from the pre-AACR2 form of heading and code subfield \$w appropriately. If there is not a one-to-one relationship or if the reference normalizes to the same form as a heading or another reference, give the pre-AACR2 heading information in a note.

130 #0 \$a Bulletin of the Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California, San Diego
410 1# \$w nnaa \$a California. \$b University. \$b Scripps Institution of Oceanography, La Jolla. \$t Bulletin

130 #0 \$a APA private practice series
667 ## \$a Includes the old catalog headings: American Psychological Association. APA private practice series; American Psychological Association. A.P.A. private practice series
(made-up example; not a one-to-one relationship: only one heading needed for AACR2 but two headings needed earlier)

130 #0 \$a Monograph (International Violin, Guitar Makers & Musicians Association)
667 ## \$a Previous to AACR2 covered by the heading: International Violin, Guitar Makers & Musicians Association. Monograph
(made-up example; not a one-to-one relationship: two headings needed for AACR2; other heading: Monograph (Violin, Guitar Makers & Musicians Association); only one heading needed earlier because name change of body was handled via latest entry cataloging)

130 #0 \$a Journal of mathematical biology. \$p Supplement
667 ## \$a Old catalog heading: Journal of mathematical biology : supplement

j) *Miscellaneous*. Give any other see reference not already mentioned if it is important for access to the heading.

130 #0 \$a Discussion paper (University of East Anglia.
School of Development Studies)
430 #0 \$a Development studies discussion paper
(*Cataloger's judgment whether series title should be recorded
as Discussion paper or Development studies discussion paper
based on presentation; reference given from form not chosen
as approach to the heading for someone who would have
chosen the other form as series title*)

General Guidelines for See Also References

If the earlier or later heading is not represented by its own series authority record, give the earlier or later information in a note instead of giving a see also reference. End such a note with the label "[unevaluated heading]."

130 #0 \$a Occasional paper (University of Singapore.
Dept. of Political Science)
667 ## \$a Continues: Singapore (City). University. Dept.
of Political Science. Occasional paper series -
Department of Political Science, University of
Singapore [unevaluated heading]

See Also References by Category of Series Authority Record

1) *Monographic series and other serials*

If a new series authority record is required by AACR2 21.2C or 21.3B and related LCRIS, connect the series authority records for the earlier and later headings with see also references.

For numbered monographic series, code subfield \$w to indicate whether the reference is for the earlier or later heading. Generally, do not code subfield \$w for unnumbered monographic series.

130 #0 \$a Royal Institute of Philosophy lectures
530 #0 \$w b \$a Royal Institute of Philosophy supplement

130 #0 \$a Royal Institute of Philosophy supplement
530 #0 \$w a \$a Royal Institute of Philosophy lectures

130 #0 \$a Weidenfeld psychology series
530 #0 \$a Weidenfeld modern psychology series
(*series is unnumbered: subfield \$w is not coded*)

26.5A

```
130 #0 $a Weidenfeld modern psychology series
530 #0 $a Weidenfeld psychology series
      (series is unnumbered: subfield $w is not coded)
```

2) *Multipart items*

Remember that a change in main entry heading or title of a multipart item is handled with a *see* reference (see 6)d) above).

3) *Series-like phrases*

If a new series authority record is required by AACR2 21.2C or 21.3B and related LCRIS, connect the series authority records for the earlier and later headings with *see also* references. Generally, do not code subfield \$w.

```
130 #0 $a Golden Press book
530 #0 $a Golden Press modern book

130 #0 $a Golden Press modern book
530 #0 $a Golden Press book
```

26.5B. REFERENCES TO ADDED ENTRIES FOR SERIES AND SERIALS. SERIALS.

If the heading for a serial is needed as part of a heading/reference in a name authority record (and, for PCC, in a series authority record), use the AACR2 form for the serial. *

LC practice: Use in the authority record the established AACR2 form for the serial from an AACR2 bibliographic or authority record in the LC database. If such a record is lacking, search OCLC or RLIN for a CONSER AACR2 record. If there is no CONSER record, formulate the heading according to the appropriate AACR2 rule for the choice of main entry, form of heading, and form of the title proper (or the uniform title); create a name authority record.

PCC practice: Use in the authority record the established AACR2 form for the serial from a CONSER serial record, a monograph record, or an authority record. If such a record is lacking, formulate the heading according to the appropriate AACR2 rule for the choice of main entry, form of heading, and form of the title proper (or the uniform title); create a name authority record.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

B.5. OTHER PARTS OF THE CATALOGUE ENTRY.

LC/PCC implementation

Bibliographic records. Substitute one form of abbreviation with the prescribed abbreviation in the edition area and in the series statement/series access point in all bibliographic records created after August 31, 2001.¹

PCC practice: Series authority records (SARs) used or created after August 31, 2001 *

SAR already in the national authority file. If the abbreviation in the “series numbering example” information (642 field) is not the prescribed abbreviation, change the 642 field to the prescribed abbreviation. For example, change “vol. 2” to “v. 2” or change “numb. 1” to “no. 1.” Notify LC’s Cooperative Cataloging Team. *

SAR being added to the national authority file. Substitute one form of abbreviation with the prescribed abbreviation when giving the 642 field information.

Rationale for implementation decisions. It is recognized that the decision to change the 642 field in existing SARs will create split files in some local catalogs using bibliographic 4XX/8XX subfield \$v information for indexing, sorting, and display for some types of searches. However, the benefit of consistent actions for catalogers, the fact that no additional bibliographic records will be created that would need to be updated in the future, and the potential ability to set off the numeral from the abbreviation in the subfield \$v information in bibliographic records justify the decision to change existing SARs.

¹The revision of B.5, published as part of *Amendments 2001*, was implemented by LC/PCC (with the approval of the Joint Steering Committee for Revision of AACR) prior to the implementation of the other revisions in those amendments.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

C.8. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

This LCRI represents LC/PCC practice for languages other than Chinese, Japanese, and Korean. For Chinese, Japanese, and Korean, apply AACR2 C.8C. *

Bibliographic Description–Edition Area

Generally accept abbreviations found in records created by other agencies or libraries. *

Otherwise, in other records, use the abbreviation on the item, a standard abbreviation in the language of the item (e.g., 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th in English; 1ra, 2a in Spanish; 1e, 2me, 3ème in French), or the regularized form 1., 2., etc. *

On source: Second revised edition *

250 ## \$a 2nd rev. ed. *

or 250 ## \$a 2d rev. ed. *

or 250 ## \$a 2. rev. ed. *

On source: Primera edición *

250 ## \$a 1. ed. *

or 250 ## \$a 1a ed. *

or 250 ## \$a 1ra ed. *

On source: Deuxième édition *

250 ## \$a 2. éd. *

or 250 ## \$a 2e éd. *

Bibliographic Description–Series Numbering

1) *Found abbreviations.* If an ordinal number in any language is already abbreviated on the item being cataloged, record that abbreviated form. *

on source: 2ème série, numéro 3 *

4XX \$a Dossier de recherche ; \$v 2ème sér., no 3 *

2) *Words or roman numerals.*

12.3B1): **For** the numbering of the series (AACR2 1.6G1) and numbering of a serial (AACR2 *

a) Record English ordinal numerals as 1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc. *

b) Record non-English ordinal numerals as 1., 2., 3., etc. *

Bibliographic Description–All Other Areas

Record the ordinal numeral as found on the item. *

*

Access Points

1) *Corporate name headings*. Use the conventional English form of the ordinal numeral (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) in the addition to a heading for a meeting (AACR2 24.7B2) and in the addition to the heading for a successive legislature (AACR2 24.21D). Otherwise, record the ordinal numeral as found.

2) *Uniform titles*

a) Use the conventional English form of the ordinal numeral (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) or the conventional form of the non-English ordinal numeral (1., 2., 3., etc.) when the ordinal numeral appears in a dependent title (AACR2 25.6A2).

b) Use the conventional English form of the ordinal numeral (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) in the heading for a numbered book of the Bible (AACR2 25.18A3).

c) In music uniform titles when ordinal numerals are being newly established (cf. LCRI 25.30C2 and LCRI 25.32A1), use the conventional English form (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) or the conventional non-English form (1., 2., 3., etc.) according to the context, except where a pattern of usage of ordinal numerals in a different form already exists. Where such a pattern exists, change existing uniform titles to conform to one of the above conventional forms when most or all of the headings involved are being changed for another reason; otherwise continue to follow the existing pattern.

d) Otherwise, record the ordinal numeral as found.

3) *Added entry for alternate form of title proper*. Use the conventional English form of the ordinal numeral (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) or the conventional form of the non-English ordinal numeral (1., 2., 3., etc.) when substituting the ordinal numeral for the word or a roman numeral in the title proper (LCRI 21.30J).

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS RULE INTERPRETATIONS (LCRI)

Cumulative list of currently valid LCRI to the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, second edition, 2002 revision.

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
<i>Chapter 1 (General Rules for Description)</i>	
1.0	May 2003 (p. 1-4); November 2003 (p. 5-6); August 2006 (p. 7-10)
1.0C	May 2006 (p. 1-2); August 2006 (p. 3-24)
1.0E	August 2006 (p. 1-2); May 2006 (p. 3-12)
1.0G	February 2006
1.0H	January 5, 1989
1.1B1	February 2003
1.1C	August 2001
1.1D2	March 1999
1.1E	January 5, 1989
1.1E5	August 2002
1.1F1	January 5, 1989
1.1F4	January 5, 1989
1.1F6	January 5, 1989
1.1F7	January 5, 1989
1.1F11	March 1999
1.1F15	January 5, 1989
1.1G1	March 5, 1990
1.1G2	June 2002
1.1G3	February 1, 1989
1.2B4	January 5, 1989
1.2B5	March 1999
1.2C4	March 1999
1.2C5	March 1999
1.2E3	March 1999
1.4A2	November 7, 1994
1.4C7	January 5, 1989
1.4D1	January 5, 1989
1.4D2	March 1999
1.4D3	May 2000
1.4D4	February 2003
1.4D5	June 2002
1.4D6	June 2002
1.4E	February 1, 1989
1.4E1	January 5, 1989
1.4F1	February 2001
1.4F2	February 2001

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
1.4F5	May 2006
1.4F6	February 2001
1.4F7	December 11, 1989
1.4F8	November 2003
1.4G	March 5, 1990
1.4G4	March 1999
1.5A1	February 2003
1.5B4	March 1999
1.5B5	January 5, 1989
1.5D2	March 1999
1.5E1	August 14, 1990
1.6	August 2006
1.6A2	August 2006
1.6B	August 2006
1.6C	November 1997
1.6E1	February 1997
1.6F	November 2000
1.6G	August 2006
1.6G1	August 2006
1.6G3	November 2000
1.6H	August 2006
1.6H3	September 1996
1.6H4	September 1996
1.6H6	November 2000
1.6H7	November 2000
1.6J	August 2006
1.7A1	February 1, 1989
1.7A3	September 15, 1989
1.7A4	February 25, 1993 (p. 1-2); February 1, 1989 (p. 3)
1.7B2	November 2002
1.7B4	June 2002
1.7B13	November 2003
1.7B20	February 2005
1.7B21	June 2002
1.7B23	May 2003
1.8	July 2005
1.8B2	January 5, 1989
1.8E1	November 7, 1994
1.10	November 2003
1.10D1	March 1999
1.11A	November 2003
1.11C	November 8, 1991

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
-------------	-----------------------

Chapter 2 (Books, Pamphlets, and Printed Sheets)

2.0B1	January 5, 1989
2.1C	December 11, 1989
2.2	January 5, 1989
2.2B1	January 5, 1989
2.2B3	January 5, 1989
2.2B4	March 1999
2.4D1	December 11, 1989
2.4E	December 11, 1989
2.4G2	January 5, 1989
2.5B7	February 4, 1991
2.5B8	January 5, 1989
2.5B9	August 2006
2.5B16	November 2002
2.5B18	June 2002
2.5B20	June 2002
2.5B21	June 2002
2.5B23	June 2002
2.5C2	August 2006
2.5C5	November 1999
2.7B1	August 7, 1991
2.7B4	December 11, 1989
2.7B7	September 1, 1992
2.7B9	January 5, 1989
2.7B14	January 5, 1989
2.7B17	February 25, 1993
2.7B18	May 2000
2.8C	November 7, 1994
2.12-2.18	August 7, 1991

Chapter 3 (Cartographic Materials)

3.1C	December 11, 1989
3.1G1	August 2001
3.1G4	December 11, 1989
3.2B3	December 11, 1989
3.2B4	March 1999
3.3B1	June 2002
3.3B2	January 5, 1989
3.3B4	June 2002
3.3C2	June 2002
3.3D	June 2002
3.4D1	January 5, 1989

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
3.4E	December 11, 1989
3.4G2	December 11, 1989
3.5B2	December 11, 1989
3.5B4	June 2002
3.5C3	June 2002
3.6C6	June 2002
3.5D1	January 5, 1989
3.5D3	June 2002
3.5D5	January 5, 1989
3.7B4	December 11, 1989

Chapter 4 (Manuscripts (Including Manuscript Collections))

4.1C	December 11, 1989
4.1F2	December 11, 1989
4.2B3	December 11, 1989
4.5B2	December 11, 1989
4.5B3	December 11, 1989
4.7B4	December 11, 1989

Chapter 5 (Music)

5.1B1	February 2005
5.1C	December 11, 1989
5.1F1	September 15, 1989
5.2B1	January 5, 1989
5.2B2	April 2005
5.2B3	December 11, 1989
5.2B4	March 1999
5.3	February 1, 1989
5.4D1	January 5, 1989
5.4E	December 11, 1989
5.4G2	December 11, 1989
5.5B1	April 2005
5.5B2	February 4, 1991
5.5B3	December 11, 1989
5.7B1	February 2005
5.7B4	December 11, 1989
5.7B7	February 2005
5.7B10	February 2005
5.7B18	February 2005
5.7B19	April 2005
5.8D1	February 2005

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
<i>Chapter 6 (Sound Recordings)</i>	
6.0B1	April 2005
6.1B1	January 5, 1989
6.1C	December 11, 1989
6.1F1	January 5, 1989
6.1G1	August 2001
6.1G4	August 2001
6.2B3	December 11, 1989
6.2B4	March 1999
6.4D1	January 5, 1989
6.4E	December 11, 1989
6.4F1	May 2001
6.4G2	December 11, 1989
6.5B1	June 2005
6.5B2	February 2005
6.5C7	February 2005
6.5C8	February 2005
6.7B1	November 12, 1991
6.7B4	December 11, 1989
6.7B6	January 5, 1989
6.7B10	February 2005
6.7B11	February 2005
6.7B18	February 2005
6.7B19	July 2005 (p. 1-2); February 2005 (p. 3)
<i>Chapter 7 (Motion Pictures and Videorecordings)</i>	
7.1B1	June 2002
7.1B2	January 5, 1989
7.1C	December 11, 1989
7.1G1	August 2001
7.1G4	August 2001
7.2B3	December 11, 1989
7.2B4	March 1999
7.4C	January 5, 1989
7.4D1	December 11, 1989
7.4E	December 11, 1989
7.4F2	January 5, 1989
7.4G2	December 11, 1989
7.5B1	December 11, 1989
7.5B2	December 11, 1989
7.7B4	December 11, 1989
7.7B7	January 5, 1989
7.7B9	January 5, 1989

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
<i>Chapter 8 (Graphic Materials)</i>	
8.1C	December 11, 1989
8.2B3	December 11, 1989
8.2B4	March 1999
8.4C	January 5, 1989
8.4D1	December 11, 1989
8.4E	December 11, 1989
8.4F2	January 5, 1989
8.4G2	December 11, 1989
8.5B1	February 15, 1994
8.5B2	January 5, 1989
8.5B6	December 11, 1989
8.5C1g)	December 11, 1989
8.7B4	December 11, 1989
8.7B7	January 5, 1989
8.7B9	January 5, 1989
8.7B18	January 5, 1989

Chapter 9 (Electronic Resources)

9.1C	December 11, 1989
9.1G1	August 2001
9.1G4	August 2001
9.2B3	December 11, 1989
9.2B6	March 1999
9.3B1	August 2001
9.4D1	December 11, 1989
9.4E	December 11, 1989
9.4F4	August 2001
9.4G2	December 11, 1989
9.5B1	December 1999
9.5C2	December 11, 1989
9.5D1	August 2001
9.7B	May 2003
9.7B4	March 1999

Chapter 10 (Three-Dimensional Artefacts and Realia)

10.1C	December 11, 1989
10.2B3	December 11, 1989
10.2B4	March 1999
10.4D1	December 11, 1989

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
10.4E	December 11, 1989
10.4G2	February 1, 1989
10.4G3	December 11, 1989
10.5B1	December 11, 1989
10.7B4	December 11, 1989

Chapter 11 (Microforms)

Chapter 11	May 1998
11.1C	December 11, 1989
11.1G1	August 2001
11.1G4	December 11, 1989
11.2B3	December 11, 1989
11.2B4	March 1999
11.4D1	December 11, 1989
11.4E	December 11, 1989
11.5B1	December 11, 1989
11.7B4	December 11, 1989

Chapter 12 (Continuing Resources)

12.0	June 2002 (p. 1-4); August 2006 (p. 5-8)
12.0A	June 2002
12.0B1	June 2002
12.0B2	June 2002
12.0B3	June 2002
12.0H	June 2002
12.1B2	February 2003
12.1B3	November 2000
12.1B4	August 2002
12.1B7	June 2002
12.1C	December 11, 1989
12.1E1	May 2003
12.2B3	June 2002
12.2F1	June 2002
12.3	June 2002
12.3A1	June 2002
12.3B1	November 2002
12.3C1	February 2003
12.3C4	June 2002
12.3D1	June 2002
12.3E1	June 2002
12.3G1	June 2002
12.4D1	June 2002
12.4D2	June 2002

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
12.4E	December 11, 1989
12.4G3	June 2002
12.5B1	June 2002
12.5B2	June 2002
12.5D2	June 2002
12.6B1	August 2006
12.6B2	June 2002
12.7A2	February 2003 (p. 1-2); June 2002 (p. 3-5)
12.7B	June 2002
12.7B1	June 2002
12.7B4.1	June 2002
12.7B4.2	June 2002
12.7B5.2	February 2003
12.7B6.2	June 2002
12.7B7.1	June 2002
12.7B8	November 2003
12.7B8a)	June 2002
12.7B8c)	June 2002
12.7B8d)	June 2002
12.7B9.2	November 2002
12.7B11.2	February 2003
12.7B14.2	June 2002
12.7B18	June 2002
12.7B23	November 2003
12.8B1	June 2002

Chapter 13 (Analysis)

13.3	August 2006
13.5	January 5, 1989
13.6	January 5, 1989

Chapter 21 (Choice of Access Points)

21.0B	January 5, 1989
21.0D	February 2004
21.1A2	January 5, 1989
21.1B1	February 2001
21.1B2	March 2005
21.1C	January 5, 1989
21.2A	November 2003
21.2A1	August 2006
21.2B2	June 2002
21.2C	August 2006

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
21.3A2	August 2006
21.3B	May 2003
21.4B	January 5, 1989
21.4C1	April 2005
21.6C1	January 5, 1989
21.7B	May 19, 1994
21.7C	May 19, 1994
21.11B	February 1, 1989
21.17B	January 5, 1989
21.18B	January 5, 1989
21.18C1	February 2005
21.21	February 2005
21.23	February 1, 1989
21.23C	February 2005
21.23D	January 5, 1989
21.27	January 5, 1989
21.28A	February 2005
21.28B	May 2003
21.28B1	February 2003
21.29	August 2006
21.29D	February 2005
21.29G	June 2002
21.30E	September 2001
21.30F	June 2005
21.30G	August 2006
21.30H	February 2005
21.30J	April 2005 (p. 1-6); February 2006 (p. 7-12, 15-16, 21-31); May 2006 (p. 13-14, 17-20)
21.30K1	May 1997
21.30K2	February 2004
21.30L	August 2006
21.30M	November 10, 1993
21.31B	February 1, 1989
21.31B1	November 2000
21.31C	January 5, 1989
21.32A	January 5, 1989
21.33A	January 5, 1989
21.35A1	February 1, 1989
21.35A2	November 27, 1990
21.35B	January 5, 1989
21.35C	January 5, 1989
21.35E2	September 15, 1989
21.36C	January 5, 1989
21.36C8	January 5, 1989
21.39	January 5, 1989

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
<i>Chapter 22 (Headings for Persons)</i>	
22.1	May 2003
22.1B	August 2006 (p. 1-2); May 2006 (p. 3-4)
22.2	February 2002
22.1C	August 2001
22.2A	January 5, 1989
22.2B	November 1995
22.3A	November 2000
22.3B1	December 11, 1989
22.3C	January 5, 1989 (p. 1); February 1, 1989 (p. 2)
22.3C2	November 2002
22.3D	December 11, 1989
22.4	January 5, 1989
22.5A	January 5, 1989
22.5C2	May 2006
22.5C4	January 5, 1989
22.5C5	November 2000
22.5D	February 2002
22.5D1	January 5, 1989
22.6	January 5, 1989
22.8	November 1997
22.8A1	August 2006
22.8A2	January 5, 1989
22.10	February 15, 1994
22.11D	January 5, 1989
22.13B	January 5, 1989
22.14	January 5, 1989
22.15A	January 5, 1989
22.15B	August 2001
22.16C	January 5, 1989
22.16D	January 5, 1989
22.17	December 2005
22.17-22.20	January 5, 1989
22.18A	February 2005
22.19	November 1995
22.22	February 1, 1989
22.25B1	January 5, 1989
22.26C1c)	January 5, 1989

Chapter 23 (Geographic Names)

23.1	February 2006
23.2	December 2005

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
23.4B	February 25, 1993
23.4C	February 1, 1989
23.4D	January 5, 1989
23.4E	January 5, 1989
23.4F1	November 10, 1993
23.4F2	May 1996

Chapter 24 (Headings for Corporate Bodies)

24.1	February 2006 (p. 1-4, 13); April 2005 (p. 5-12)
24.1B	January 5, 1989
24.2	May 21, 1990
24.2B	January 5, 1989
24.2C	January 5, 1989
24.2D	January 5, 1989
24.3A	January 5, 1989
24.3E	February 1, 1989
24.3G	January 5, 1989
24.4B	March 2001 (p. 1-2); December 2001 (p. 3)
24.4C	February 11, 1992 (p. 1-2); May 19, 1994 (p. 3)
24.4C4	February 15, 1994
24.4C5	February 15, 1994
24.5C1	January 5, 1989
24.6	August 1997
24.7	February 1997
24.7A	March 2001
24.7B	December 2005
24.7B2	January 5, 1989
24.8	September 1996
24.8B	January 5, 1989
24.9	January 5, 1989
24.10B	November 17, 1994
24.13	May 8, 1991
24.13, TYPE 2	November 1995
24.13, TYPE 3	January 5, 1989
24.13, TYPE 5	January 5, 1989
24.13, TYPE 6	August 7, 1991 (p. 1-4); February 1, 1989 (p. 5)
24.14	January 5, 1989
24.15A	January 5, 1989
24.15B	January 5, 1989
24.17	August 2001
24.18	January 5, 1989
24.18, TYPE 2	November 1995
24.18, TYPE 3	January 5, 1989
24.18, TYPE 5	January 5, 1989

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
24.18, TYPE 6	January 5, 1989
24.18, TYPE 11	January 5, 1989
24.19	February 1, 1989
24.20B	January 5, 1989
24.20E	January 5, 1989
24.21B	January 5, 1989
24.21C	January 5, 1989
24.21D	January 5, 1989
24.23	January 5, 1989
24.24A	January 5, 1989
24.26	November 1999
24.27C	January 5, 1989
24.27C3	November 12, 1991

Chapter 25 (Uniform Titles)

25.1	August 2006
25.2A	February 15, 1994
25.3A	May 1998
25.3B	March 5, 1990
25.4A	May 1998
25.5B	August 2006
25.5B, Appendix I	April 2005 (p. 1-4); August 2006 (p. 5-28)
25.5C	November 2002
25.5D	January 5, 1989
25.6A	January 5, 1989
25.6A2	November 1999
25.6B3	May 2006
25.7	May 2000
25.8	August 2006 (p. 1-2); February 2003 (p. 3-4)
25.8-25.11	February 2005
25.9	February 25, 1993
25.10	May 28, 1993
25.11	May 28, 1993
25.13	August 2006
25.14	November 20, 1992
25.15A1	January 5, 1989 (p. 1, 3-4, 7); February 1, 1989 (p. 2, 5-6)
25.15A2	January 5, 1989
25.18A	March 31, 1989
25.19 and 25.23	January 5, 1989
25.23	January 5, 1989
25.25	February 2005
25.25A	April 2005
25.27	February 2005

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
25.27A1	February 2005
25.27A1, footnote 10	April 2005
25.27D1	February 2005
25.28	February 2005
25.29A	February 1, 1989 (p. 1); January 5, 1989 (p. 2)
25.30	April 2005
25.30B1	February 2005
25.30B3	February 2005
25.30B4	February 2005
25.30B5	April 2005
25.30B7	April 2005
25.30B10	February 2005
25.30C2	February 2005
25.30C3	February 2005
25.30D	January 5, 1989
25.30D2	February 2005
25.31B1	February 2005
25.32A1	April 2005
25.32A2	January 5, 1989
25.32B1	April 2005
25.34B-25.34C	February 2005
25.34B1	August 2006
25.34C1	February 2005
25.34C2	February 2005
25.34C3	February 2005
25.35	February 2005
25.35C	April 2005
25.35D1	February 2005
25.35F	February 2005

Chapter 26 (References)

26	May 2003
26.1	May 21, 1990 (p. 1-2); December 11, 1989 (p. 3-4)
26.1A	December 11, 1989
26.2	May 2003
26.2B2	August 8, 1994
26.2B3	January 5, 1989
26.2B4	January 5, 1989
26.2C	August 2001
26.2D	February 1, 1989
26.2D2	January 5, 1989
26.3	January 5, 1989
26.3A3	January 5, 1989
26.3A4	June 2005

Current LCRI

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
26.3A6	February 14, 1989
26.3A7	November 17, 1994
26.3B-C	December 2005
26.4B	April 2005 (p. 1-6); August 2006 (p. 7-8)
26.4B1	April 2005
26.4B3	February 2005
26.4B4	February 2005
26.4C	November 27, 1990
26.4D2	February 1, 1989
26.4D3	February 2005
26.5A	August 2006
26.5B	August 2006
26.6	February 1, 1989

Appendix A (Capitalization)

A.2A	January 5, 1989
A.4A1	May 19, 1994
A.4D1	February 15, 1994
A.7A	January 5, 1989
A.15A	January 5, 1989
A.20	January 5, 1989
A.25	May 21, 1990
A.31	February 1, 1989
A.33	November 1999
A.34	January 5, 1989
A.53	January 5, 1989
A.54	January 5, 1989

Appendix B (Abbreviations)

B.4	January 5, 1989
B.5	August 2006
B.9	January 5, 1989
B.14	November 27, 1990

Appendix C (Numerals)

C.1	February 2004
C.5C	January 5, 1989 (p. 1); February 1, 1989 (p. 2)
C.7	January 5, 1989
C.8	August 2006

<i>LCRI</i>	<i>Date(s) Issued</i>
<i>Appendix D (Glossary)</i>	
Appendix D	April 2005

Current LCRI

LCRI

Date(s) Issued

[Intentional Blank Page]

— NUMERALS —

"80% rule" (personal names), 22.3A

667 fields

Earlier names of corporate bodies previously represented by *see* references, 26.3
 Pre-AACR2 forms of name when linking reference technique not used, 26
 Unused pre-AACR2 corporate subdivisions, 26.3

— A —

AACR2

Rule corrections (1988 revision), 25.30B6, 25.35A1

Abbreviations

Additions to list, B.9
 Consisting of more than one letter, 1.0C
 Corporate body names as parts of titles proper in serials, 12.1B3
 Corporate names, 24.1
 Corporate names (references), 26.3A6
 Cross references from spelled out forms, 26.3A6
 "Department" (AACR2 form), B.9
 "i.e." and "et al." in nonroman scripts, B.4
 Other parts of the catalog entry, B.5
 Personal names (forenames or surnames), 22.1B, 22.18A
 Personal names (*not* initials), 22.1B, 22.18A
 Rule revision, B.5
 Series numbering, 1.6G
 Sources or attributions after a quoted notes, 1.7A3
 Spacing conventions, 1.0C
 State names, B.14
 Surnames of Hungarian-language personal names, 22.5C2
 Surnames of Spanish-language personal names, 22.1B, 22.5C2, 26.2
 Titles proper, 21.30J
 "V.I.," B.14

Academic degrees

Terms (thesis notes), 1.7B13

Academic disputations (function designations), 21.27

Accent marks

see

Diacritics

Access points

Arabic numerals, C.1
 Periods, 1.0C

Index

- Sources, 21.0B
- Spacing conventions, 1.0C
- Accompanists as separate entities from corporate bodies accompanied (main and added entries), 21.23C, 21.29D**
- Accompanying ensembles**
 - Added entries for individuals in unnamed groups, 21.29D
 - Uniform title terminology (one player/part), 25.30B7
- Accompanying materials**
 - Cataloging treatment, 1.5E1
 - Items made up of several types of material, 1.10
 - Monograph vs. serial vs. integrating resource supplementary material, 1.0
 - Physical descriptions, 1.5E1
 - Program notes/inserts, 6.7B11

- Acronyms
 - see*
 - Initials, initialisms, and acronyms**

- Ad hoc events as corporate entities, 21.1B1**
- Adaptations**
 - By original composer, 21.18C1
- Added accompaniments, 21.21, 25.35C**
- Added entries**
 - see also*
 - Analytical added entries**
 - Related work added entries**
 - Series added entries**
 - Title added entries**

 - 246 field and initial articles, 21.30J
 - Agreements (other parties—exception), 21.35B, 21.35C
 - Agreements (general revisions—exception), 21.35E2
 - "Annual report," 21.30J
 - Arr. (omission in headings), 21.18B
 - Binder's titles, 2.7B4
 - Collections containing works by two or more composers, 21.7B-C
 - Collections (guidelines), 21.7B-C
 - Conference proceedings, 24.7B2, 24.30E
 - Contents notes as justification, 2.7B18
 - Corporate bodies, 21.1B2, 21.30E
 - Corporate bodies named prominently, 21.30E
 - Corporate bodies sponsoring conferences, 21.30E
 - Covered by references (LC policy), 21.29G, 26.6
 - Facsimile editions of manuscripts, 21.30H
 - General material designations, 21.19
 - Honoree of Festschriften, 21.30F
 - Illustrators (children's literature), 21.0D, 21.30K2

Institutions where exhibitions held, 21.30F
 Issuing bodies (series), 21.30E
 Jazz ensembles (individual members), 21.29D
 Jurisdictions enacting legislation (exception), 21.31B1, 21.33A
 Justification (corporate bodies named in conjunction with personal names), 1.1F7
 Librettists, 21.28A
 Multipart items, 21.30L
 Music, 21.30F
 Musical works based on or inspired by an art work, 21.30G
 Musical works based on or inspired by a literary work, 21.30G
 Musical works based on or inspired by the works of an author or artist, 21.30G
 Opera companies, houses, etc., 21.29D, 21.30E
 Order, 21.29
 Performers, 21.29D
 Performers (omission when belonging to performing groups given added entries), 21.29D
 Performers (omission when given main entry as principal performer), 21.29D
 Performers (omission when participating in small number of works), 21.29D
 Performers (omission when participation is minor), 21.29D
 Performers when many perform the same functions, 21.29D
 Persons in unnamed accompanying ensembles, 21.29D
 Proceedings of two or more meetings of one conference issued in one item, 24.7B
 Repositories or names of manuscripts, 21.30H
 Separately published issues of periodicals, 21.30G
 Serials, 21.30G
 Series (definition, form, and guidelines), 21.30L
 Series statements appearing only on jackets or in bibliographies, 1.6A2
 Sound recordings, 21.23, 21.29D, 21.30E, 25.34
 Sound recordings (one or more works by the same person or body), 21.23
 Special numbers to serials, 21.30G
 Supplements to series/serials, 21.30G
 Titles proper, 21.30J
 Titles proper same as or similar to main entries or subject headings, 21.30J
 Translators of belles lettres, 21.30K1
 Treaties, etc. (other parties—exception), 21.33A
 Uniform titles, 21.30J
 "Works," 21.30M
 Writers of texts of catalogs of the works of a single artist, 21.17B

"Added title" notes, 2.7B4

Added title pages (notes), 2.7B4

Additions to ...

see also primarily

Qualifiers ([type of name])

Index

_____ **personal names**

- Bishops, etc., who are also saints, 22.16C
- Dates, 22.17
- Dates in cross references, 26.1
- Dates (uncertain), C.7
- Delimiters to separate additions, 22.1B, 22.5D
- Descriptive phrases for pre-20th century persons, 22.19
- Exceptional cases ("additions" as parts of the names—punctuation and references), 22.8A1
- "fl.," 22.17, 22.19
- Full forms of initials (no conflicts), 22.18A
- Heads of government acting in official capacities, 24.20B
- Japanese priests, 22.16D
- Musicians, 22.19
- Names not entered under first elements, 22.8A2
- Persons of religious vocations, 22.16D
- Phrases commonly associated with personal names (from non-English sources), 22.8A1
- Romanized JACKPHY records (usage for distinguishing names from additions), 22.1B
- Saints who are also bishops, etc., 22.16C

_____ **publications designed to receive them, 2.5B9**

_____ uniform titles

see

Uniform titles

Additions ...

Addresses (publishers), 1.4C7

Administrative regulations, etc., 21.32A

"Administrative subordination" (terms)

Government bodies, 24.18, TYPE 2

Non-government bodies, 24.13, TYPE 2

Airplanes, Names, 24.1

Airports, 24.1

Almanacs (U.S.)

Title changes for 17th-19th century U.S. almanacs, 21.2C

Almshouses, 24.1

Alphabetic designations in subordinate corporate names, 24.1

Alternative provisions

see

Optional or alternative provisions (decisions)

Alternative titles

Title access, 21.30J

Uniform titles (omissions), 25.3B

Uniform titles (music), 25.27
Ambiguous entities, 23.1, 24.1, 24.7, 24.8
American Indian tribes, 23.1
Ampersands
Corporate headings, 26.3A6
Punctuation, 24.1
Titles proper, 21.30J
Uniform titles (updating to AACR2), 25.1

Analytical added entries

see also

Related work added entries

Dates, 21.30M, 25.8
Definition, 21.30M
Formulation, 21.30M
Sound recording collections (omission from incomplete collections), 25.34
Sound recording collections (omission from non-classical music collections), 25.34
Sound recording collections containing excerpts from one work, 25.34
Sound recording collections containing three-five works by one composer, 25.34
Sound recording collections containing works by two or more composers, 21.7B-C
Title access, 21.30M
Works in collections, 21.7B, 21.7C
"Analyzable" titles (definition), 25.6A
Ancient laws, certain medieval laws, customary laws, etc., 21.31C

Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, Second ed.

see

AACR2

Appendices (contents notes), 2.7B18

Aquariums, Public, 24.1

Arabic numerals

see also

Numbers

Series numbering

Chinese, Japanese, and Korean numerals (substitution), C.5C
Decimals and commas, C.1
Forms (access and non-access areas), C.1
Title access, 21.30J
Updating existing records, C.1
Archival moving image materials, 1.6, 7.1B1

Index

Armed forces headings

see

Military headings

Arboretums, 24.1

Arr. (omission in headings), 21.18B

Art and exhibition catalogs

Added entries (institutions in which held), 21.30F

Art exhibitions as corporate entities, 21.1B1

Catalogs without reproductions, 21.17B

Catalogs unrelated to exhibitions (choice of entry), 21.1B2

Catalogs of works of single artists (choice of entry), 21.17B

Catalogs of works of more than one artist (choice of entry), 21.1B2, 21.17B

Art galleries (qualifiers), 24.4B

Art reproductions

Catalogs without reproductions, 21.17B

Catalogs of works of single artists (choice of entry), 21.17B

Catalogs of works by more than one artist (choice of entry), 21.17B

Art works

Musical works based on or inspired by, 21.30G

Uniform titles, 25.3A, 25.4A, 25.5B

Artificial satellites, 24.1

Artists

Musical works based on or inspired by a work/the works of an artist, 21.30G

Artists as authors, 21.17B

Articles

see

Initial articles

Articles in romanized headings

Hebrew (capitalization), A.34

At head of title notes

Serials, 12.7B7.1

At heads of titles

Soviet bloc agencies "stamp of approval," 24.17

Athletic contests, 24.7

Atlases

see

Cartographic materials

Auction catalogs, 21.1B2

Audience notes, 2.7B14

Authors

Musical works based on or inspired by a work/the works of an author, 21.30G

— B —

Bars, 24.1

Basso continuo

see

Continuos (Uniform titles)

Belles lettres items

Added entries for translators, 21.30K1

Notes (literary form), 2.7B1

BGN

see

U.S. Board on Geographic Names

Biblical figures, 22.19

Bibliographic data sheets as "preliminaries," Appendix D

Bibliographic descriptions

Spacing conventions, 1.0C

Bibliographic notes

see

Notes

[specific type of note]

Bibliographic records

520 field, 2.7B17

Bibliographies containing series statements, 1.6A2

Bilingual editions and dictionaries (chief source of information), 1.0A3

Binders' titles

Added entries, 2.7B4

Notes, 2.7B4

Bindings/formats

see also

Formats (various)

Binding types (qualifier to standard number), 2.8D2

CIP items, 1.0

ISBNs (choice, order, and qualifications), 1.8

Prices, 1.8

Variations (edition or copy?), 1.0

Biological stations, 24.1

Index

Board on Geographic Names (U.S.)

see

U.S. Board on Geographic Names

Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce), 24.1

Books published before 1801

see also

Incunabula

Rare books

Descriptive cataloging, 2.12-2.18

Uniform titles, 25.14

"Bound with" notes, 1.7B21

Botanical gardens, 24.1

Brackets

Alphabetic, numeric, or chronological designations of serials, 12.3B1

Bracketed material in titles proper, 21.30J

Dates and places of manufacture, 1.4G

Publication, distribution, etc., information from stamps or labels, 1.4A2

Uniform titles (name authority and bibliographic records), 25.1

Branches of corporate bodies, 24.9

British Library

Geographic names, 23.2

British terms of honor, 22.1C

Business firms

Terms of incorporation, 24.5C1

— C —

Cadenzas, 21.28A

Call numbers

Multipart items in series classed as collections, 1.6B, 1.6J

Canadian headings

see

National Library of Canada

Cancellations

Information references, 26.3B-C

Canon law (choice of entry), 21.1B2

Capitalization

Breton, A.33

"Contents," "Summary," etc. (notes), 1.7A3

Document names, A.20

Galician, A.33
Georgian, A.33
Hebrew articles (romanized), A.34
Hyphenated compound words, A.31
Latvian, A.53
Lithuanian, A.54
"Little words" in English corporate names, A.2A
Mongolian, A.33
Non-Slavic, Cyrillic languages, A.33
Occitan, A.33
Publisher statements on serials, A.7A
Scientific names of plants and animals, A.25
Sources or attributions after quoted notes, 1.7A3
Titles with introductory words, A.4A1, A.4D1
Vietnamese, A.33
Zoogeographic regions, A.15A

Cartographic materials

Corporate bodies as producers, 21.1B2
Items lacking a collective title, 1.1G2
Maps as illustrations, 2.5C2

Cartoons

see

Comic strips

Cataloger-generated references

see also

Explanatory references

Initialisms and acronyms, 26.3B-C
General instructions, 26.1
Pseudonyms, 22.2B
Use of explanatory references, 26.2D1, 26.3B-C

Cataloger's notes

see

Notes

Cataloging responsibilities

Related work added entries, 21.30G

Catalogs

see

Art and exhibition catalogs

Cemeteries, 24.1

Census data contained in other works, 21.28B

Index

Census (U.S.) publications (uniform titles), 25.5B

Chambers of commerce (U.S.)

see

U.S. chambers of commerce

Chapters of corporate bodies, 24.9

Charts

see

Cartographic materials

Chief sources of information

Access points, 21.0B

Bilingual editions and dictionaries, 1.0A3

Choice (monographs), 2.0B1

Direct access electronic resources, 12.0B2

Electronic serials that don't retain earlier title/bodies, 12.0B1

Illustration statements, 1.1F15

Multiple (single part items containing two or more works), 1.1G3

Multiple (repetition of information), 2.0B1

Series-subseries, 1.6A2

Successive leaves or pages, 2.0B1

Title page substitutes (serials), 12.0B2

Children's literature

Headings (illustrators), 21.0D, 21.30K2

Choreographic works

Uniform titles, 25.5B

Chorus score

Definition, Appendix D

Choruses of opera companies

see

Opera companies, houses, etc. (added entries)

Chronological designations

In notes, 12.7A2

Option decision, 1.6G3

Churches

see

Local churches

CIP items

Intended audience notes, 2.7B14

Publication, distribution, etc., area (chief source), 1.4A2

Citation titles of laws as uniform titles, 25.15A1, 25.15A2

City sections, 23.1, 23.4F2

Closing open entries

Dates of publication, 1.4F8

Physical description areas, 1.5B5

Closing dates (years of reign or incumbency), 24.20B

Coding for AACR 2

see

[Types of heading]

Collations

see

Paginations

Physical description areas

Extent of items

[specific terms]

Collected sets

see

Multipart items

Collections

see also

Collective uniform titles

Collective titles (items lacking)

"Non-collection"

(*see* AA2 21.7A)

Analytical added entries, 25.8

Analytical added entries (without collective title), 21.7C

Analytical added entries (with collective title), 21.7B

Choice of entry (without collective title), 21.7C

Contents notes, 2.7B18

Definition, Appendix D

Librettos of works by one composer (main entries), 21.28A

"Made up" collections (physical description area), 2.5B18

Main and added entries (guidelines), 21.7B-C

Main works with lesser works, 25.1

No single chief sources of information (single part items, no collective titles), 1.1G3

Partial collections by authors who write in a single form, 25.9

Translations, etc., 25.11

Uniform titles, 25.8

Uniform titles (literary works of composers), 25.8, 25.10

Uniform titles (two works by one author), 25.7

Works in a single form (uniform titles), 25.10

Works in translation (uniform titles), 25.11

Index

Collections of independent publications republished together (notes), 2.7B7

Collections (music sound recordings)

- Analytical added entries (three-five works by one composer), 25.34
- Analytical added entries (works by two or more composers), 21.7B-C
- Analytical added entries (omission for incomplete collections), 25.34
- Main entry (three-five works by one composer), 25.34

Collective settlements, 23.1

Collective titles

- Compact discs and cassettes, 6.0B1
- Main entry for sound recordings (works by different persons or bodies), 21.23C
- Title access, 21.30J

Collective titles (items lacking)

- Cartographic materials, 1.1G2, 3.1G1
- Microforms, 1.1G2
- Motion pictures and videorecordings, 7.1G1
- One part predominant, 1.1G1
- Single subsequent statements of responsibility, 1.1G3
- Sources of information for compact discs and cassettes, 6.0B1
- Title access, 21.30J
- Unit descriptions for sound recordings, 6.1G1

Collective uniform titles

see also

Uniform titles

- Added entries and examples ("Works" and "Selections"), 25.8
- Additions (music) [*rule correction*], 25.35A1
- Collections entered under corporate names, 25.8
- Collections in a single form, 25.10
- Multipart items, 25.5B
- Other than "Works" and "Selections," 25.8
- Publishers' names added to distinguish editions of "Works," etc., 25.8
- Qualifiers, 25.8
- Reasons to change, 25.8
- Translations, etc., 25.11
- Uniform titles for complete musical and literary works, 25.8, 25.10
- Updating headings to AACR 2, 26
- When to assign, 25.8
- "Works" and "Selections" (forms and guidelines), 25.8

Colophons

- Forms of name (items published in the former USSR), 22.3A
- Definition (amplification), Appendix D
- Location (books with paper covers), Appendix D
- Location (publications printed by GPO), Appendix D
- Source for series statement, 1.6A2

Combined references, 26.1

Comic strips

Uniform titles, 25.5B

Commas

Between names and associated phrases, 22.8A1

In series of words (English), 24.1

With numbers, C.1

Commercial firms

*see***Business firms****Commercial publishers**

Authors of series having no titles, 1.6

Hierarchies in imprints, 1.4D2

Communes, 23.1**Compatible headings**

Guidelines (corporate names), 24.1

Guidelines (personal names), 22.1

Competitions, 24.7**Composers**

Adaptations of own works, 21.18C1

Added entries (when performing own works), 21.29D

Choice of name, 22.1B

Composers and writers, 25.8, 25.10

Composers and authors, 22.1B

Composers and authors (uniform titles for collections), 25.8

Composers not considered contemporary authors, 22.2

Computer files

*see***Electronic resources**

Computer software

*see***Electronic resources****Concentration camps, 24.1****Concert halls, 24.1****Conductors (separate entities from corporate bodies conducted—main and added entries),**
21.23C, 21.29D**Conferences, meetings, etc.**

Added entries, 21.30E

Added entries (treaties), 21.35A2

Choice of entry, 21.1B2

Choice of entry (two meetings of the same conference), 24.7B

Conflicts, 24.7B

Containing ISBD-type punctuation, 1.1B1

Index

Corporate bodies, 21.1B1
Corporate names (containing), 21.1B1, 24.13, TYPE 6
Dates as part of names of meetings (qualifiers), 1.0C, 14.1, 24.7A, 24.7B
Electronic conferences (Location), 24.7B
Entered directly, 24.13, TYPE 6
Generic term names of meetings of bodies, 21.1B1, 24.13, TYPE 6
Generic term names of meetings sponsored by bodies, 21.1B1
Government delegations, 24.26
Irregular numbering (optional notes), 24.7B2
Monographic vs. serial vs. integrating resource, 1.0
Named meetings combining acronyms or initialisms and abbreviated or full date, 1.0C, 21.1B1, 24.1, 24.4B 24.7A, 24.7B
Named meetings containing entire names of corporate bodies, 21.1B1, 24.13, TYPE 6
Named meetings (definition), 21.1B1
Named/unnamed with generic terms, 21.1B1
Named meetings entered subordinately, 24.13, TYPE 6
Named meetings entered subordinately (definition), 21.1B1
Ongoing conferences (conflicts), 24.7B
Ongoing conferences (name authority records), 24.7B
Proceedings (two or more meetings of one conference issued in one item—choice of entry), 24.7B
Qualifiers, 24.7B
Qualifiers (ongoing conferences), 24.7B
Qualifiers (omissions from references), 26.3A3
References, 26.3A3
References (minor name changes), 24.2
References for earlier/later names (named), 26.3B-C
Subordinate to higher bodies, 24.13, TYPE 6
Two meetings of the same conference (choice of entry), 24.7B
Unnamed meetings (no notes on bibliographic records), 26.3B-C
Updating headings to AACR2, 26
Working sessions of bodies, 21.1B1
Year (spacing), 10C

Conflicts

Art works, 25.5B
Biblical figures, 22.19
Corporate names, 24.4C
Corporate names no longer unique, 24.4C
Definition (corporate names), 24.4C
"fl." (personal names), 22.17, 22.19
Geographic names, 23.4F1
Geographic names (conflicts with names generally not qualified), 24.6
Integrating resources, 25.5B
Involving pre-1981 corporate headings, 24.4C
Involving pre-1981 references covering earlier corporate names, 24.4C
Hawaii local places, 23.4F1

-
- Monographic titles, 25.5B
 - Musicians, 22.19
 - Not resolved by qualifiers, 24.4C, 24.4C5
 - Personal name headings, 22.17
 - Personal name headings (changing established headings), 26
 - Personal name headings with personal name references, 26.2C
 - Pseudonym references, 26.2B3
 - Serials/series titles, 25.5B
 - Serials/series titles (definition), 25.5B
 - Sovereign nations with other places, 24.6
 - States, provinces, etc. (places in other jurisdictions), 24.6
 - States, provinces, etc. (places in same larger jurisdiction), 24.6
 - Telephone calls, 22.17
 - Titles of address, etc., 22.17, 22.19
 - Titles, 25.5B
 - Townships, 23.2, 23.4F1
 - Townships (other townships in the same states), 23.4F1
 - Unused forenames or surnames, 22.17
 - Congolese personal names**, 22.8
 - Conservation districts**, 23.1
 - Constitutions (uniform titles)**, 25.3B
 - Constitutions, charters, and other fundamental laws**
 - References in lieu of added entries (enacting jurisdictions), 21.33A
 - Consultant firms**
 - General designation qualifiers, 24.4B
 - Consultants' reports (choice of entry)**, 21.1B2
 - Contents notes (formal)**
 - Books in one volume, 2.7B18
 - Format, 1.7A3, 2.7B18
 - Multipart items (complete and incomplete), 2.7B18
 - Multipart items (volumes in different editions), 2.7B18
 - Multipart items (volumes lacking titles), 2.7B18
 - Music, 5.7B18
 - Other title information, 2.7B18
 - Punctuation, 2.7B18
 - Sound recordings, 6.7B18
 - Sources, 2.7B18
 - Statements of responsibility, 2.7B18
 - Volume designations, 2.7B18
 - What to omit, 2.7B18
 - When some volumes lack titles, 2.7B18
 - When to provide, 2.7B18
 - Contents notes (formal or informal)**, 2.7B18

Index

Contents notes (informal)

see

Notes

[specific type of note]

Contests, 24.7

Contractions (antiquated orthography), 1.0E

Copies

see also

Duplicates (identification)

Copies vs. new editions, 1.0, 1.2B3

Copy-specific notes

Features of LC copies, 1.7B20

Imperfections or specific features (monographs), 1.7B20

Numbered copies, 2.7B7

Works bound by LC, 2.7B4

Copyright dates

Dates later than current year, 1.4F6

Items lacking publication dates, 1.4F6

Latest copyright date (electronic resources), 9.4F4

Materials other than books and printed serials, 1.4F5

Sound recordings, 1.4F5, 6.4F1

Transcription, 1.4F5

Copyright statements (containing forms of name), 22.3A

Copyright symbols

Transcription (bibliographic records), 1.0E

Corporate bodies as authors of series having no titles, 1.6, 25.5B

Corporate bodies as sponsors of meetings

Added entries, 21.30E

Meetings as subordinate bodies to sponsors, 24.13, TYPE 6

Corporate bodies named prominently (added entries), 21.30E

Corporate main entries

see

Main entry headings (corporate names)

Corporate names

see also

Corporate names as qualifiers

Corporate names entered directly

Corporate names entered subordinately

AACR2 "compatible" headings (guidelines), 24.1

Abbreviations, 24.1, 26.3A6

Added entries (named on chief sources in conjunction with personal names), 1.1F7

-
- Added entries for electronic or computer music studios, 21.30F
Added entries for Library of Congress foundations and funds, 21.30F
Administrative subordination, 24.13, TYPE 2, 24.18, TYPE 2
Ambiguous entities, 24.1
"And" or ampersands, 24.1, 26.3A6
Armed forces headings, 24.24A
At head of titles (Soviet bloc countries), 24.17
Bodies associated with publication of items (*not* publishers), 1.4D4
Bodies having changed locations, 24.4C4
Branches, 24.9
British county councils, 24.17
Canadian headings, 24.1
Capitalization of "little words" in English corporate names, A.2A
Catholic dioceses, sees, etc., 24.27C3
Chapters, 24.9
Civil War (U.S.) army units, 24.24A
Closing dates in years of reign or incumbency, 24.20B
Confederate Army units, 24.24A
- Conferences, meetings, etc.
see
Conferences, meetings, etc.
- Conflicts
see
Conflicts
- Contained in meeting or conference names, 21.1B1, 24.13, TYPE 6
Contained in serial titles proper, 12.1B3
Containing entire names of higher or related bodies, 24.13, TYPE 6
Containing entire names of higher or related bodies (references), 24.13, TYPE 6
Containing geographic names, 24.1
Containing ISBD-type punctuation, 1.1B1
Containing names of parent bodies, 24.13, 24.18
Containing personal names (references), 26.3A3
Dashes, 24.1
Delegations (forms of heading), 24.26
"Department" in headings, B.9
Different forms (references), 26.3A3
Directly entered subordinate or related bodies (qualifiers), 24.4C
District councils in England, Scotland, and Wales, 24.17, 24.18, TYPE 6
Earlier/later references, 26.3B-C
Earlier names (667 fields in name authority records), 26.3
Earlier names (covered by one pre-AACR2 heading), 24.1B, 26
Earlier names (covered by one pre-AACR2 heading needed as heading), 24.1B, 26,
26.3B-C
Earlier names (covered by references to later names), 26.3

- Earlier names (establish or not), 26.3B-C
- Exhibitions, 21.1B1, 21.1B2
- Forests, parks, preserves, etc., as agencies 24.1
- Full forms vs. initials, etc., 24.2D

- General designation qualifiers
 - see*
 - General designation qualifiers**

- Geographic qualifiers (names change), 24.4C4
- Government agencies containing names of parent bodies, 24.18
- Government bodies exercising full powers of those governments, 24.3E
- Government bodies needing qualifiers, 24.4C
- Government officials acting in official capacities, 24.20B, 24.20E
- Great Britain (regional/district councils), 24.17, 24.18, TYPE 6
- Heads of state (references), 26.3B-C
- Hierarchies, 24.14, 24.19
- Hierarchies (unclear), 1.1F4
- How to qualify (government headings), 24.4C
- How to qualify (non-government headings), 24.4C
- Hyphens, 24.1
- In several languages, 24.3A
- Individual performer's name appears in conjunction with the name of a performing group, 24.1
- Incorporation (terms), 24.5C1
- Incorporation (terms—references), 26.1
- Information/publication agencies, 26.3
- Initials (qualifiers and references), 24.4B2
- Initials, etc., 24.1
- Initials, etc. (references), 26.3B-C
- Initials, etc., vs. full forms, 24.2D
- "Institutions," 24.4C
- International bodies (languages), 24.3A
- Joint committees, etc. (headings and references), 24.15A
- Joint committees, etc., as subordinate bodies (headings and references), 24.15B
- Legislative subcommittees (state and federal) and their subordinate units (entry and references), 24.21C
- Legislatures and their subordinate units (entry and references), 24.21B
- Local churches (forms of entry), 24.13, TYPE 6
- Local churches (qualifiers), 24.10B
- Military units, etc., 24.24A
- Military units (numbered), 24.24A
- Minor changes of name, 24.2
- National level vs. non-national level (subordination), 24.18, TYPE 3
- Non-government bodies needing no qualifiers, 24.4C
- Nonroman scripts, 24.1B
- Official languages of bodies, 24.3A

Omission of hierarchies, 24.14, 24.19
 Orthographic reforms, 24.2C
 Performing duets, 24.4B
 Plus signs, 26.3A6
 Proposed bodies (and subsequent establishment), 24.2
 Prosecuting attorneys, 24.23
 Punctuation, 24.1

Qualifiers

see

Qualifiers (corporate names)

General designation qualifiers

Quotation marks, 24.1
 Reasons to change (capitalization), A.2A
 Reasons to change (initials vs. full forms), 24.2D
 References, 26.3, 26.3A3
 References (forms), 26.1
 References (from jurisdictions), 26.3A7
 References (minor name changes), 24.2
 Regional councils (England, Scotland, and Wales), 24.17, 24.18, TYPE 6
 Related bodies (establish or not), 26.3B-C
 "Royal" privilege terms beginning names (references), 26.3A3
 Serial titles proper (containing names), 12.1B3
 Ships, 24.4B
 Spacing, 24.1
 Sports teams, 24.4B
 State legislative councils, 24.21B
 State university statewide systems, 24.13, TYPE 6
 Subordinate bodies (containing names or parts of names of higher bodies), 24.13, 24.18
 Subordinate bodies (identified by letters or numbers and function words), 24.1
 Subordinate bodies (responsible only for preparation), 21.1B2
 Surnames, 24.4B
 Symbols, trademarks, etc., 24.1
 UNESCO national commissions, 24.17, 24.18, TYPE 11
 Union Army units, 24.24A
 United Nations as a government body, 24.17
 University library building names vs. library names, 24.2
 Unused subdivisions, 26.3
 Variant forms (qualifiers or not), 24.2B
 When to change (geographic qualifiers), 24.4C4
 Years of reign or incumbency (closing dates in headings), 24.20B

Corporate names as qualifiers

Conferences, meetings, etc., 24.7B
 Conflicts (not resolved), 24.4C
 Corporate names, 24.4C4
 Forms, 24.4C, 24.4C4

Index

Qualifiers to other corporate names (names change), 24.4C4
Qualifiers to uniform titles (names change), 25.5B
Uniform titles, 25.5B

Corporate names as series titles, 25.5B

Corporate names entered directly

see also primarily

Corporate names

_____ (government)

Containing all or part of the names of parent bodies, 24.13, 24.18
How to qualify, 24.4C
National vs. non-national agencies, 24.18, TYPE 3
References, 26.3A7
When to qualify, 24.4C

_____ (non-government)

Containing all or part of the names of parent bodies, 24.13
How to qualify, 24.4C
When to qualify, 24.4C, 24.13, TYPE 3

Corporate names entered subordinately

see also primarily

Corporate names

_____ (government)

Bodies exercising all powers of jurisdictions, 24.3E
Consisting of alphabetic or numeric designations, 24.1
Containing all or part of the parent bodies' names, 24.13, 24.13, TYPE 6, 24.18
Direct or indirect subheadings, 24.19
Hierarchies, 24.19
Joint committees, etc., of common bodies (headings and references), 24.15B
Legislative subcommittees (state and federal) and their subordinate units (entry and references), 24.21C
Legislatures and their subordinate units (entry and references), 24.21B
Major executive agencies (national governments only), 24.18, TYPE 5
References and reference evaluation, 24.18, 24.18, TYPE 2, 26.3A3

_____ (non-government)

College or university units indicating fields of study, etc., 24.13, TYPE 5
Consisting of alphabetic or numeric designations, 24.1
Containing all or part of the parent bodies' names, 24.13
Containing names of higher or related bodies, 24.13, TYPE 6
Direct or indirect subheadings, 24.19
Guidelines for forms of name, 24.13, TYPE 1-5
Hierarchies, 24.19
Joint committees, etc., of common bodies (headings and references), 24.15B
References and reference evaluation, 24.13

Corporate names (variant forms)

Conflicts with headings or references, 24.4C

Minor changes of name, 24.2
Reference guidelines, 26.3

Country clubs, 24.1

Court decisions, cases, etc.

Briefs, pleas, etc., for one party (choice of entry), 21.36C8
Function designations, 21.36C
Records for one party (choice of entry), 21.36C8

Coutumes

see

Laws (collections)

Laws (single)

Covers defined as "preliminaries," Appendix D

Credits

Integrated with titles proper, 7.1B1

Crematories, 24.1

Cross references

see also

Earlier/later references

Linking references

Reference evaluation

AACR2-d headings (corporate names), 26.1
AACR2-d headings (personal names), 26.1
Agreements (other parties)/uniform titles, 21.35B, 21.35C
Agreements (general revisions), 21.35E2

Cataloger generated references

see

Cataloger-generated references

Catholic dioceses, sees, etc., 24.27C3
Civil War (U.S.) army units, 24.24A
Combined prefixes (personal names), 26.2A3
Combined references, 26.1
"Compatible" headings (corporate names), 26.1
"Compatible" headings (personal names), 26.1
Conferences, 26.3A3
Conflicts (corporate names), 24.4C
Conflicts (personal names), 26.2C
Conflicts (personal names—pseudonyms), 26.2B3
Corporate bodies that change locations, 24.4C4
Corporate names, 26.3, 26.3A3
Corporate names (minor name changes), 24.2
Corporate names (orthographic reforms), 24.2C
Corporate names beginning with terms of royal privilege, 26.3A3

Corporate names containing abbreviations, 26.3A6
Corporate names containing ampersands, 26.3A6
Corporate names containing personal names, 26.3A3
Corporate names entered subordinately, 24.13, 24.18
Corporate names in all capital letters, 24.4B, 26.1, 26.3B-C
Corporate names including names of higher or related bodies, 24.13, TYPE 6
Corrections to titles proper (Serials and integrating resources), 26.5A
Dates, 26.1
Different entry elements (personal names), 26.2
Different forms (corporate names), 26.3A3
Different forms (personal names), 26.2
Different titles (music), 26.4B1
Dioceses (Church of England), 24.27C
Earlier/later references made from information references, 26.3B-C
Earlier/later corporate names, 26.3B-C
Earlier/later geographic names, 26.3B-C
Earlier/later named conferences, 26.3B-C
Earlier names of corporate bodies needed as headings, 26.3B-C
Ethiopian names, 22.8

Evaluation for AACR2

see

Reference evaluation

Examples (personal names), 26.1
Explanatory references, 22.13, 26.3B-C
Explanatory references (LC practice), 26.2D
Exhibitions, fairs, etc., 26.3A3
Filipino names, 22.5A
Form (general guidelines), 26.1
Form (personal names examples), 26.1
General guidelines, 26.1, 26.2
"General" references no longer made, 26.3B-C
Geographic names, 26.3
Geographic names beginning with articles, 26.3A3
Government agencies at head of title (Soviet bloc countries), 24.17
Government bodies entered subordinately, 24.18, TYPE 2, 26.3A3
Headings including abbreviations, 26.3A6
Heads of state, 26.3B-C
Initial articles, 26.1
Initials and acronyms (corporate headings), 26.3B-C
Initials to full forms (personal names), 26.1
In place of added entries (LC policy), 21.29G, 26.6
Information references (conversion to *see also* references), 26.3B-C
Information references (LC policy), 26.3B-C
Introductory words to titles proper, 26.5A
Inverted references, 26.3A3
Joint committees, commissions, etc., 24.15A

Joint entities as subordinate bodies, 24.15B
Joint pseudonyms, 26.2D
Jurisdictions enacting legislation/uniform titles, 21.31B1, 21.33A
Languages (corporate and geographic names), 26.3
Languages (personal names), 26.1
Laws (authority records for texts of single laws or subject compilations), 25.15A2
Legislative subcommittees, etc. (state and federal), 24.21C

Linking references

see

Linking references (headings)

LSP normalization, 26, 26.1, 26.2, 26.3
Malaysian geographic names, 23.4C
Manuscript repositories, 25.13
Military installations, 23.1
Misattributed musical works, 21.4C1, 26.4B
Particles or separately written prefixes (personal names), 26.2
Personal name references (identical to established headings), 26.2C
Personal names, 26.2
Personal names (orthographic reforms), 22.3D
Personal names (conflicting pseudonyms), 26.2B3
Personal names consisting of initials, 22.10, 26.2B2, 26.2B4
Personal names consisting of surnames and associated phrases or terms of address, 22.5D, 22.15A
Personal names entered under given names and associated phrases (exceptional cases), 22.8A1
Personal names entered under last element of multiple surnames (lacking forenames), 22.1B
Personal names in corporate names, 26.3A3
Personal names with prefixes/particles, 22.5D
Pseudonyms on non-separately-published items, 22.2B
Pseudonyms that conflict, 26.2B3
Qualifiers change names, 23.4B, 24.4C4
Qualifiers (corporate names), 24.4B, 26.1
Qualifiers (personal names), 26.1

Reference evaluation

see

Reference evaluation

References for collective titles (music), 26.4B4
"Relational" reference structures, 26.3B-C
Royal privilege terms, 26.3A3

See also references

see

See also references

Index

Serials, 26.5B
Series, 26.5A
Somalian names, 22.8
Sports teams, 24.4B
Subordinate units (legislatures), 24.21B
Titles proper (uniform title "Works," etc.), 25.8
Titles of honor, etc. (uses and languages), 26.1
Titles of parts cataloged under the title of the whole work (music), 26.4B3
Treaties, etc. (conferences), 21.35A2
Treaties, etc. (form), 25.4B, 25.4C, 26.4B
Treaties, etc. (other parties)/uniform titles, 21.35A1, 21.35A2, 26.4B
Treaties, etc. (general revisions), 21.35E2
Two works issued together—no reference from title proper, 25.7
Typographic styles, 26.1
Uniform titles (single laws), 25.15A2
Unused subdivisions, 26.3
Variants of the title (music), 26.4B1
When to update, 26.1
Zairian names, 22.8

Cumulations (serials), 12.0

Currencies

see

Prices

Customary laws

see

Laws (collections)

Laws (single)

— D —

Dance halls, 24.1

Dashes (corporate names), 24.1

Dates

Original publication dates given in titles, 1.11C

Titles proper (access instructions), 21.30J

Dates as qualifiers (conference headings)

Authority records vs. bibliographic records (ongoing conferences), 24.7B

Ongoing conferences (conflicts), 24.7B

Dates as qualifiers (corporate names)

Closing dates of reign or incumbency, 24.20B

Exhibitions, fairs, festivals, etc., with dates in names, 24.8B

Expeditions, 24.7

Heads of government acting in official capacities, 24.20B

Meetings with dates in names, 24.7B

U.S. Civil War units, 24.24A

Dates as qualifiers (personal names)

see

Additions to personal names

Dates as qualifiers (uniform titles)

Reprints, 25.5B

Serials and series, 25.5B

"Works" and "Selections," 25.8

Dates of composition, 5.1B1

Dates of issue

Dates (immediately succeeding serials), 12.7B8a)

Dates of publication (first issues later than subsequent issues), 1.4F8

Government documents, 2.7B9

Dates of manufacture

Inferred dates of publication, 1.4F2

On items lacking publication dates, 1.4F6

Phrases denoting, 1.4F6

Dates of original publications in titles, 1.11C

Dates of production

Different media, 7.7B7, 8.7B7

Same medium, 7.4F2, 7.7B7

Dates of publication

see also

Copyright dates

Analytical added entries, 21.30M, 25.8

CIP items at the galley stage, 1.4F1

Copyright dates (substitution), 1.4F6, 9.4F4

Copyright dates differ (other than books and printed serials), 1.4F5

Dates later than current year, 1.4F1

Dates of manufacture (substitution), 1.4F6

Given in titles, 1.11C

Gregorian dates vs. non-Gregorian dates, 1.4F1

Inferred dates, 1.4F2, 1.4F6, 2.7B9, 6.4F1; *also* AACR 1.4F7

Issue dates, 2.7B9

Items lacking edition statements, 1.4F1

Items lacking dates, 1.4F6

Multipart items, 1.4F8

Multiple dates (qualifications), 1.4F8

Multiple dates (U.S. Congressional documents), 1.4F2

Multiple dates on items, 1.4F2

Notes (serials), 12.7B11.2

Original publication dates given in titles, 1.11C

Qualifications, 1.4F8

Release or transmittal dates, 2.7B9

Index

"Selections" (music uniform titles), 25.34
Sound recordings with only © date, 6.4F1
Temporary dates, 1.4F8
Use of other dates (dates of publication lacking), 1.4F6

Dates of release or transmittal, 2.7B9

Degree signs, 1.0E

Delegations to international and intergovernmental bodies

Authority records (serials vs. monographs), 24.26
Forms of heading, 24.26

Deleting initial articles

see

Initial articles

Delimiters

245 fields, 21.30J
Personal names (supplied by catalogers), 22.1B, 22.5D
Separate names from additions, 22.1B, 22.5D

Diacritics

Books published before 1801, 1.0G
Capital letters (French, Portuguese, Spanish), 1.0G
Filipino names, 22.5A
Ligatures, 1.0E
Transcription, 1.0E
Transcription (antiquated forms), 1.0E

Dialects

see

Languages

Dimensions

Change in for integrating resources, 12.5D2
Containers, 1.5D2

Direct or indirect subheadings, 24.14, 24.19

Directly entered corporate bodies

see

Corporate names entered directly

Directly entered personal names

Delimiters, 22.1B
Romanized JACKPHY records, 22.1B

Discographies, 2.7B18

Dispersed distribution, 1.4D4

Dissertation notes

see

Thesis notes

Distribution

see

Distributors

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

Distribution symbols

see also

Cross references

Bibliographic records (literary form notes), 2.7B1

Distributors

see also

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

CIP items at the galley stage, 1.4D4
Dispersed distribution, 1.4D4
Music publications, 5.4D1
On jackets, 1.4D4
Phrases denoting function, 1.4E, 1.4E1
Remainders, 1.4D4
Second-hand dealers, 1.4D4
Sound recordings, 6.4D1
Sources of information, 1.4D4
Stamps or labels, 1.4D4
U.S. government publications, 1.4D4

District attorneys (forms of heading), 24.23

District of Columbia

City Council enactments, 21.31B1
vs. Washington, D.C., 23.2

Documents

see

Government documents

Double underscores (special letters), 1.0E

Duets (qualifiers), 24.4B

Duplicates (identification), 1.0

Durations (audiovisual materials)

Contents notes, 8.7B18
Frame counts, 8.5B2

Durations (music)

Format for duration of performance, 5.7B10

Durations (sound recordings)

Additions (parts of works), 6.7B10
"ca.," 6.5B2, 6.7B10
Format, 6.7B10

Index

Locations of statements, 6.7B10
Music sound recordings, 6.5B2
Omissions, 6.5B2, 6.7B10
Rounding-off seconds, 6.7B10
Total durations (sound recordings containing more than one work), 6.5B2
Total durations (optional statements when sound recordings contain more than one work), 6.5B2

— E —

"e" (German), 1.0E

Earlier/later editions, 1.7A4

Earlier/later references

Earlier names covered by pre-AACR2 headings, 26.3B-C
Geographic names (notification of Subj Cat), 26.3B-C
"[no publs. in LC database]," 26.3B-C
Reference structures (guidelines and examples), 26.3B-C

Earlier names ...

see also

Corporate names

Earlier names ...

Cross references

Earlier names ...

Geographic names

Earlier/later names ...

Earlier names (corporate bodies covered by references)

Conflicts, 24.4C
Earlier names (AACR2 forms in 667 fields), 26.3
Earlier names needed as headings, 24.1B, 26.3B-C
Reference evaluation instructions, 26.3

Early printed monographs

Descriptive cataloging of books published before 1801, 2.12-2.18
Uniform titles, 25.14

Ecclesiastical parishes, 24.3G

Ecological stations, 24.1

Edition and history notes

Printed music, 5.7B7

Edition statements

Abbreviations, B.5
Dates of release or transmittal, 2.7B9
Edition statements vs. musical presentation statements, 5.2B1
Edition statements (music) vs. statements of responsibility, 5.2B1
Examples, 2.2B1

- Gleaned from texts, 2.2B3
- In two or more languages or scripts (serials), 12.2B3
- Initial articles, 1.0
- Items lacking, 1.2B4
- Multipart items (volumes in various editions), 2.2, 2.7B18
- Qualifiers to uniform titles, 25.5B
- Song, song cycle, or set or collection of songs bearing a statement designating the voice range, 5.2B2
- Updating loose-leafs (notes), 12.7B9.2

Editions*see also***Limited edition notes****Revised editions**

- Change in edition information (serials). 12.2F1
- Earlier/later editions, 1.7A4
- Identical series numbering, 1.6G
- Multipart items (volumes in various editions), 2.2, 2.7B18
- Music publications (definition and discussion), 5.2B1
- New editions, 1.0
- New editions vs. copies (rare book cataloging), 1.0
- New editions vs. reissues, 1.0
- New editions vs. republications, 2.7B7
- Printed music and sound recordings, 1.0
- Order of authors' names, 21.6C1
- Previous editions pre-AACR2, 1.7A4
- Serials, 12.7B8f)
- Statements gleaned from texts, 2.2B3

Editions linked by notes, 1.7A4**Editors**

- From CIP data sheets, 1.1F1
- In statements of responsibility, 1.1F1

Electronic location and access (856) field, 1.11A

Electronic reproductions

- Bibliographic descriptions, 1.11A
- Electronic location and access (856) field, 1.11A
- General material designations, 1.11A
- LC policies, 1.11A
- Notes, 2.7B7, 1.11A, 12.7B23

Electronic resources

- Changes in title proper, 12.7B4.2
- Changes in type and extent of resource area notes, 12.7A2
- Changes of persons or bodies responsible (serials and integrating resources), 21.3B
- Chief source of information (direct access electronic resources), 12.0B1
- Common titles and section titles, 12.1B4
- Copyright dates, 9.4F4
- Description of items lacking a collective title, 9.1G1, 9.1G4

Index

Designation in file characteristics area, 9.3B1
Notes on changes in type and extent of resource area, 12.7A2
Remote access no longer available, 9.7B
Serial vs. integrating resource, 1.0
Serials that don't retain earlier title/bodies, 12.0B1
Title proper, 1.1B1
Uniform titles, 25.5B
Updating remote access electronic resources, 21.3B

Electronic serials

see

Electronic resources

Ellipses

Title pages, 1.1B1
Titles proper of serials, 12.1B7

Encyclopaedia Judaica, 22.3C

Ensembles (accompanying)

see

Accompanying ensembles

Equals signs

Preceding parallel statements, AACR2 1.1A1
Series numbering, 1.6G
Title pages, 1.1B1

Errata slips (notes), 2.7B18

"ess-zet," 1.0E

Ethiopian personal names, 22.8

Ethnic music sound recordings

see

Pop, folk, ethnic, jazz sound recordings

Evaluation of pre-1981 headings

see

[Type of heading]
Reference evaluation
Updating pre-AACR2 headings

Events, 24.7, 24.8

Excerpts from serials (treatment), 21.28B

Excerpts (musical works)

Analytical added entries (sound recordings), 25.34

Executive agencies (national level), 24.18, TYPE 5

Exhibition catalogs

see

Art and exhibition catalogs

Exhibitions, fairs, etc.

Added entries (institutions), 21.30F

As corporate entities, 21.1B1, 21.1B2

Catalogs

see

Art and exhibition catalogs

Dates as qualifiers, 24.8B

Monographs vs. serial vs. integrating resource, 1.0

References, 26.3A3

Expeditions

Ambiguous entities, 24.7

Choice of entry, 21.1B2

Dates (qualifiers), 24.7

Explanatory references

see also

Cataloger-generated references

Guidelines, instructions, examples, 26.3B-C

LC practice, 26.2D

Not made to cover added entries, 21.29G

Pseudonyms, 22.2B

Extent of items

see also

Physical description areas

Bibliographic units bound together by the institution, 2.5B18, 12.5B2

Bibliographic units vs. physical units (serials), 12.5B2

Leaves or pages of plates, 2.5B9

Multipart items (ceased), 2.5B21

Multipart items (complete), 1.5B5

Multipart items (incomplete), 2.5B16

Multipart items (sound recordings), 6.5B1

“Of music,” 5.5B1

Parts listed in contents notes (formal and informal), 2.7B18

Physical units vs. bibliographic units (serials), 12.5B2

Updating loose-leafs, 12.5B1, 12.5B2

Factories, 24.1

Famous people too recent for reference sources (nonroman scripts), 22.3C

Festivals and celebrations, 24.8

Festschriften

Added entries for honorees, 21.30F

Figured basses

see

Continuos (Uniform titles)

File characteristics area (Electronic resources)

Designation, 9.3B1

Filing (automated)

Data in brackets preceded by "i.e." or "[sic]," 21.30J

Honorary titles or terms of address preceding forenames, 22.1C, 22.15B

Filipino names, 22.5A

Filmographies, 2.7B18

Films

see

Motion pictures

Firms

see

Business firms

Flourishing dates, 22.17, 22.19

Folk festivals and celebrations, 24.8

Folk music sound recordings

see

Pop, folk, ethnic, jazz sound recordings

Foot/feet symbols, 1.0E

"For sale by the Supt. of Docs.," 1.4D4

Foreign films, etc. (notes), 7.7B9

Forests as agencies, 24.1

Form of composition

Notes and uniform titles, 5.7B1, 6.7B1

Formats

see also

Bindings/formats

Formats (alternate)

see

Alternate media (notes)

Formats (various)

Availability (description), 1.5A3

Treatment (description), 1.10

Frame counts

Contents notes, 7.7B18

Physical description areas, 8.5B2

Fullness of names

see primarily

Personal names

Personal names (determination of commonly known forms)

Personal names (different names or forms of name)

Function designations, 21.0D

Academic disputations, 21.27

Court decisions, cases, etc., 21.36C

Exceptions, 21.0D

Funeral homes, mortuaries, 24.1

— G —

Games (Events), 24.7

"General" cross references (discontinuance), 26.3B-C

General designation qualifiers

Corporate names, 24.4B

Corporate names (all capital letters), 24.4B

Forests, parks, preserves, etc., as agencies, 24.1

General material designations

Added entries, 21.29

List, 1.1C

List (graphic materials), 8.5B1

Macroreproductions, 1.11A

Microreproductions, Chapter 11

Uniform titles, 25.5D

Geographic names

Australia, 23.2

Ambiguous entities, 23.1

BGN romanizations, 23.2

British Isles, 23.2, 23.4D

Canada, 23.2, 23.4C

Changes, 26.3B-C

China, 23.2

City sections, 23.1, 23.4F2

Conflicts

see

Conflicts

Contained in corporate names, 24.1, 24.13, TYPE 6

Earlier/later names (qualifiers), 23.4B

English vs. vernacular forms, 23.2

Foreign names used by more than one jurisdictional level, 23.2

Germany, 23.2

Great Britain, 23.2

Great Britain, Australia, New Zealand, 23.2

Hawaii (conflicts), 23.4J

India (districts), 23.2

Initial articles, 23.2

Initial articles (references), 26.3A3

Islands and island groups, 23.4B

Israel, 23.4E

Jerusalem, 23.4E

Jordan, 23.4E

Korea, 23.2

Local places on islands, 23.4F2

London, 23.2

Military installations, 23.1

"Mount," 23.2

New Zealand, 23.2

Not qualified, 23.4B

Not qualified (conflicts), 24.6

Provided by BGN, 23.2

Provided by NLC, 23.2

Qualifiers

see

Qualifiers (geographic names)

Geographic names as qualifiers

References, 26.3, 26.3A3

References from, 25.3A7

Republics of the former Soviet Union, 23.2

"Saint," 23.2

Smaller places (names change or cease to exist), 23.4B

South African homelands, 23.4E

Soviet Union and constituent republics, 23.2

States, provinces, etc., 23.4C

Succession of jurisdictions (same name), 24.6

Syria, 23.4E

Taiwan, 23.2

Thesis notes, 1.7B13
Townships, 23.2, 23.4F1
United States, 23.2

Updating to AACR2

see

Updating pre-AACR2 headings

Washington, D.C., vs. District of Columbia in headings, 23.2

Washington (State), 24.6

Geographic names as qualifiers

Catholic dioceses, sees, etc. (references and headings), 24.27C3

Conferences, meetings, etc., 24.7B

Conflicts, 24.4C

Current forms vs. earlier forms, 24.4C4

Form, 24.4C

Places in Israel, Jordan, and Syria, 23.4E

Qualifiers (names change), 23.4B, 24.4C4, 25.5B

References, 26.1

Uniform titles (serials/series), 25.5B

Geographic names (variant forms—reference guidelines), 26.3

Glottal stops, 1.0E

GMDS

see

General material designations

Government bodies entered ...

see

Corporate names entered ... (government)

Government documents

Dates of release or transmittal, 2.7B9

Issue dates, 2.7B9

Publication dates (inferred), 2.7B9

Government names

see

Geographic names

Government officials (official capacities)

Heads of state (dates of incumbency), 24.20B

Names of officials on chief sources, 24.20E

Government printers

Printers, 1.4D1

Publishers or distributors, 1.4D1

Government Printing Office

Index

- Publisher, 1.4D4
- Greek (language name)**
 - Headings, 25.5C
 - Notes, 1.7B2
- Greek letters**, 1.0E
- Gregorian and non-Gregorian dates**
 - Dates of publication, 1.4F1
 - Personal name headings, 22.17

— H —

- Halfway houses**, 24.1
- Hawaii (local place names)**, 23.4F1
- Heads of state, etc.**
 - Dates of Reign or incumbency (closing dates), 24.20B
 - References, 26.3B-C
- Hebrew articles (capitalization)**, A.34
- Herbariums**, 24.1
- Hierarchies (corporate names)**, 24.19, 24.14
 - Evaluation of headings for AACR2, 24.19
 - Recording (publication, distribution, etc., areas), 1.4D2, 1.4D4
 - Recording (statements of responsibility), 1.1F4
- Holdings
 - see*
 - Extent of items**
 - Physical description areas**
 - Temporary data (monographs)**
- Honorific names (university libraries)**, 24.2
- Hotels**, 24.1
- Hyphens**
 - Compound words (capitalization), A.31
 - Corporate names, 24.1

— I —

- I vs. J**, 1.0E, 25.1
- Illustrated texts**, 21.11B
- Illustrations**
 - Description, 2.5C2
 - Identical items, AACR2 1.5B1
 - Transcribing from chief sources, 1.1F15

Illustrators

Headings, 21.0D, 21.30K2

Imperfect copies

Notes, 1.7B20

Imprints/imprint positions

see

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

Inaccuracies, misspellings, etc., serial, series titles, 1.6B

Inch/inches symbols, 1.0E

Incorporation (terms)

Corporate names, 24.5C1

Serial titles recorded as publishers, 1.4D2

Incunabula

Descriptive cataloging, 2.12-2.18

Uniform titles, 25.14

Independent entries of part titles, 25.6A

Independently issued works

Bound together, 1.7B21

Republished together, 2.7B7

Indexes

Notes, 2.7B18

Separately cataloged, 21.28B

Serial (treatment), 1.5E1, 21.28B

Indian tribes (U.S.)

see

American Indian tribes

Indic names

Initials, 22.3C2

Individual works of art

Uniform titles, 25.3A, 25.4A, 25.5B

Information/publication agencies (guidelines), 26.3

Information references

see also primarily

"Relational" reference structures

Eliminating, 26.3B-C

Replaced by "relational" reference structures, 26.3B-C

Initial articles

Cross references, 26.1

Geographic names, 23.2

Geographic names (references), 26.3A3

Omitted, 21.30J

Personal names, 22.4

Index

Traced series, 21.30L
Transcription, 1.0
Uniform titles, 25.1

Initialisms

see

Initials, initialisms, and acronyms

Initials

see

Initials, initialisms, and acronyms

Initials, initialisms, and acronyms

see also

Letters

Abbreviations instead (personal names), 22.1B
Conference names combining acronyms or initialisms and abbreviated date, 1.0C, 21.1B1, 24.7A, 24.7B
Corporate names (spacing and punctuation), 24.1
Corporate names consisting of initials (forms of heading), 24.2D
Corporate names consisting of or containing initials (references), 26.1, 26.3B-C
Corporate names in all capital letters (qualifiers and references), 24.4B, 26.1
Cross references containing or consisting of initials (personal names), 26.1, 26.2B2, 26.2B4
Cross references containing or consisting of initials (corporate names), 26.3B-C
Full forms in parentheses (no conflict personal names), 22.18A
Hungarian-language surnames, 22.5C2
Other title information (Serials and integrating resources), 21.30J
Personal names consisting of initials, 22.10, 26.1, 26.2B2, 26.2B4
Personal names containing or comprising initials (form), 22.1B
Punctuation, 1.0C
Punctuation (corporate names), 24.1
Punctuation (personal names), 22.1B
Spacing conventions, 1.0C
Spacing conventions (corporate names), 24.1
Spacing conventions (personal names), 1.0C, 22.1B
Spanish-language surnames, 22.5C2
Titles consisting of acronyms or initialisms, 12.1B2, 21.30J
Titles proper (title access), 21.30J

Insignia

see

Symbols

Institutions

Forms of name, 24.4C
Thesis notes, 1.7B13

Institutions vs. local places (qualifiers for conferences, meetings, etc.), 24.7B**Instrumental music**

"Instrumental ensemble" as statements of medium in microform titles, 25.30B5

Uniform titles (more than one performer to a part) [*rule correction*], 25.30B6**Integrated titles**

Uniform titles beginning with statements of responsibility, 25.3B

Integrating resources

Bibliographic history note, 12.7B8

Changes in dimensions, 12.5D2

Changes in edition information (updating loose-leaves), 12.7B9.2

Changes in other title information, 12/7B6.2

Changes in parallel titles, 12.7B5.2

Changes in title other than title proper, 12.7B4.1

Changes in title proper and ISSNs, 12.7B4.2

Changes in type and extent of resource area notes, 12.7A2

Changes of persons or bodies responsible, 21.3B

Dates of publication (updates expected), 1.4F8

Extent of item (updating loose-leaves), 12.5B1, 12.5B2

Frequency, 12.7B1

Identification of iterations in notes, 12.7A2

In one or more series, 21.30L

Language of notes, 12.7A2

Loose-leaf services, 12.0

Monograph vs. serial vs. integrating resource, 1.0

Notes on changes in type and extent of resource area, 12.7A2

Title conflict resolution, 25.5B

Updating loose-leaves, 21.3B

Intellectual levels

Notes, 2.7B14

International phonetic alphabet, 1.0E

International standard book numbers

see

ISBNs

International standard numbering system, 1.8

Internet

*see***Integrating resources****Inverted exclamation marks, 1.0E****Inverted question marks, 1.0E****Inverted references**

Conferences, fairs, etc., 26.3A3

Government bodies, 26.3A3

Index

IPA

see

International phonetic alphabet

ISBD marks of punctuation appearing on title pages, 1.1B1

ISBNs, 1.8

see also

Standard numbers

Explanation of ISBNs, 1.8

Invalid ISBNs, 1.8

Multiple ISBNs given in items (order of transcription), 1.8

Multiple ISBNs given in items (qualifiers), 1.8

Multiple ISBNs, 1.8B2

Nine-digit numbers, 1.8

Order, 1.8

Punctuation and paragraphing, 1.8

Qualifiers, 1.8, 2.8D2, 1.8B2

Serials, 12.8B1

Ten-digit numbers, 1.8

Transcription, 1.8

Islands and island groups

Headings, 23.4B

Places in Hawaii, 23.4F1

Places on islands, 23.4F2

ISSNs

see also

Standard numbers

And changes in title proper (integrating resources), 12.7B4.2

Main series only, 1.6H7

Series statements, 1.6F

Traced series, 21.30L

Issuance

Change of issuance, 1.0

Monograph vs. serial vs. integrating resource, 1.0

Issued in parts

see

Notes

— J —

J vs. I, 1.0E, 25.1

Jackets

Distributors given only on jackets, 1.4D4

Series statements appearing only on jackets, 1.6A2

Jazz ensembles (added entries for individual members), 21.29D

Jazz sound recordings

*see***Pop, folk, ethnic, jazz sound recordings****Joint committees, commissions, etc.**

As subordinate bodies (headings and references), 24.15B

Reference structures, 24.15A

Joint pseudonyms (references), 26.2D

Jurisdictional headings

*see***Geographic names****Jurisdictional types (as qualifiers), 24.6****Jurisdictions, Ancient, 23.1**

Juvenile literature

*see***Children's literature**

— K —

Keyboard instruments (uniform titles for 18th century music—harpsichord vs. piano vs. keyboard instrument), 25.30B4**Keys**

English used, 25.30D

Parallel statements, 5.1B1

Kits, LC practice, 1.10

— L —

Labels

*see***Stamps or labels****Language notes**

Form, 1.7B2

Language notes vs. languages in uniform titles, 1.7B2

Index

Languages requiring notes, 1.7B2
Summaries, 2.7B18
Uses, 1.7B2
Vocalized title pages, 1.7B2

Languages

see also

Languages (official)

Multilingual works

Translations

Corporate names, 24.3A
Cross references (personal names), 26.1
Cross references (corporate names), 26.3
Forms of name, 1.7B2

Greek

see

Greek (language name)

Notes (language of items unclear from title transcriptions), 1.7B2
Personal names, 22.3B1
Requiring literary form notes, 2.7B1
Uniform title headings, 25.5C

Languages (official)

Chief sources of information, 1.0A3
Corporate bodies, 24.3A

Latvian capitalization, A.53

Laws (collections)

Added entries, 25.15A1
Changes in titles, 25.15A1
Codes of U.S. states, 25.15A1
Collections other than U.S. states, 25.15A1
Coutumes, 21.31B, 21.31C
Coutumes (homologated as statutes), 21.31C
Customary laws, 21.31B, 21.31C
Customary laws (as statutes), 21.31B
Customary laws (homologated as statutes), 21.31C
Customary laws (notes for dates decreed), 21.31B
Session laws (U.S. states), 21.2C, 25.15A1
Subject compilations lacking citation titles and collective titles, 25.15A1
Titles (capitalization), A.20
Uniform titles, 25.15A1
Uniform titles (parts of collections), 25.15A1

Laws (single)

Coutumes (notes for dates decreed), 21.31B
Coutumes (uniform titles), 21.31B
Customary laws (notes for dates decreed), 21.31B

-
- Customary laws (uniform titles), 21.31B
 - Jurisdictions that changed, 21.31B1
 - Official short titles or citation titles containing names of jurisdictions (headings and references), 25.15A2
 - Uniform titles, 25.15A2
 - Updating uniform titles to AACR2, 26
- Lecture series, 1.6**
- Legislative bodies (successively numbered), 24.21D**
- Lengths
see
Durations
- Letters**
see also
Initials, initialisms, and acronyms
- Antiquated forms, 1.0E
 - Corporate names, 24.1
 - Designating subordinate bodies, 24.1
 - Not associated with series titles (monographs and serials), 1.6
 - Series numbering, 1.6G
 - Series titles, 1.6B
 - Titles proper (access), 21.30J
- Library's holdings notes (monographs), 1.7B20**
- Librettos, 21.28A**
- Ligatures, 1.0E**
- Limited edition notes, 2.7B7**
- Line below letters, 1.0E**
- Linking notes**
- Editions, 1.7A4
 - Serials, 12.7B8
- Linking references (headings)**
- AACR2 changes only, 26
 - As valid cross references, 26
 - Distribution, 26
 - Function, 26
 - NACO uses, 26
 - Name authority records, 26
 - Uniform titles, 26, 25.1
 - When inappropriate, 26
 - When to trace, 26
- Linking references (series/serials)**
- In series authority record, 26.5A
 - Series uniform titles that have changed, 25.5B
 - Successive entries, 25.5B
 - Uniform title changes, 25.5B
- Literary forms of items (notes), 2.7B1**

Index

Lithuanian capitalization, A.54

Liturgical titles

- Choice of entry for liturgical works, 21.1B2
- Generic terms (music uniform titles), 25.29A
- Languages (uniform titles), 25.19
- Omission of media of performance (music uniform titles), 25.29A
- Plural forms (music uniform titles), 25.29A

Liturgical works, 21.39

Local churches

- Local churches vs. parishes, 24.3G
- Qualifiers, 24.10B

Local notes, 1.7B20

Local places vs. institutions (qualifiers for conferences, meetings, etc.), 24.7B

Logos

see

Symbols

Loose-leaf items

see

Integrating resources

— M —

Macroforms

see

Macroreproductions

Macroreproductions

- As editions, 2.7B7
- Bibliographic descriptions, 1.11A
- "Demand" publications, 2.7B7
- General material designations, 1.11A
- LC policies, 1.11A
- Notes, 2.7B7, 1.11A

Main entry headings

see also

Title main entries ...

_____ **(corporate names)**, 21.1B2

- Art works, 21.1B2
- Cartographic materials, 21.1B2
- Changes (multipart items), 21.3A2
- Changes (serials and integrating resources), 21.3B

-
- Consultants' reports, 21.1B2
 - Determination, 21.1B2
 - Performing groups, 21.1B2
 - Subordinate bodies vs. parent bodies, 21.1B2
 - _____ **(corporate vs. personal vs. title entries)**, 21.1B2
 - _____ **(personal names)**
 - Authors of texts (catalogs of works by single artists), 21.17B
 - Catalogs of works (single artists), 21.17B
 - Catalog of works (multiple artists), 21.1B2a
 - Changes (multipart items), 21.3A2
 - Changes (serials and integrating resources), 21.3B
 - Consultants' reports, 21.1B2
 - Definition of author, AACR2 21.1A1
 - Function designations, 21.0D
 - Librettos, 21.28A
 - Principal performers (sound recordings), 21.23C
 - Serials, 21.1A2
 - _____ **(personal vs. corporate)**, 21.1B2
 - Main series vs. subseries**, 1.6H
 - ISSNs for main series only, 1.6H7
 - Not appearing together on items, 1.6H
 - Manufacturers' names and locations omitted**, 10.4G2
 - Manuscripts**
 - Added entries (names or repositories), 21.30H
 - Forms of heading, 25.13
 - Physical aspects, 25.13
 - Maps
 - see*
 - Cartographic materials**
 - MARC character set**
 - Characters not included, 1.0E
 - MARC tagging practice**
 - Changes in other title information (integrating resources), 12.7B6.2
 - Changes in parallel titles (integrating resources), 12.7B5.2
 - Changes in title other than title proper (integrating resources), 12.7B4.1
 - Markets**, 24.1
 - Marks of contraction**, 1.0E
 - Married women (parentheses around forenames)**, 22.2A
 - Matrix numbers**, 6.7B19
 - Medium of performance**
 - Notes and uniform titles, 5.7B1, 6.7B1
 - Parallel statements, 5.1B1

Index

Meetings

see

Conferences, meetings, etc.

Memorandum series authority records

see also

Monographic series

Multipart items

Lecture series, 1.6

Microfiches

see

Microreproductions

Microforms

see

Microreproductions

Microreproductions

Bibliographic descriptions, Chapter 11

General material designations, Chapter 11

Items lacking a collective title, 1.1G2

LC policies, Chapter 11

Notes, Chapter 11

Series uniform titles, 25.5B

Military headings, 24.24A

Civil War (U.S.) army units, 24.24A

Expeditions, 24.7

Military installations as local place names, 23.1

Numbered units, 24.24A

Minute/minutes symbols, 1.0E

Misspellings, etc.

see

Inaccuracies, misspellings, etc.

"Mixed editions," 2.2, 2.7B18

Monographs vs. serial vs. integrating resource, 1.0

Monographic series

see also

Series

Analysis (music), 13.3

Different physical media, 1.6

Issued in several editions, 1.6

Lacking analyzable titles (analyzed, classified separately), 13.3

Lecture series, 1.6
References on authority records, 26.5A

Supplements

see

Supplements to series/serials

Morgues, 24.1

Motels, 24.1

Motion pictures

Motion picture music (uniform titles for single composer collections), 25.34C2

Uniform titles, 25.5B Appendix I

Motion pictures, television programs, and Videorecordings

Archival Moving Image Materials, 1.6, 7.1B1

"Mount" in geographic names, 23.2

Moving image materials, archival, 1.6

Multilingual works

see also

Translations

Translations, 25.5C

Uniform titles, 25.5C

Multipart items

Added entries, 21.30L

Analysis (music), 13.3

"Analyzable" titles (definition), 25.6A

Changes of persons or bodies responsible, 21.3A2

Changes in titles proper, 21.2A1

Collective uniform titles, 25.5B

Contents notes, 2.7B18

Dates of publication (complete), 1.4F8

Dependent and independent titles, 13.3

Dependent titles (definition), 25.6A

ISBNs

see

ISBNs

Item described note, 1.7B23

Lacking analyzable titles (analyzed, classified separately), 13.3

Mixture of dependent and independent titles, 13.3

Paginations for individual volumes, 2.5B20

Physical descriptions (complete), 1.5B5

Physical descriptions (incomplete), 1.5B16

Physical descriptions (sound recordings), 6.5B1

Index

Prices

see

Prices

Publishers' numbers (music publications), 5.7B19

Series numbering on incomplete items, 21.30L

Unanalyzable, new, unnumbered, 13.3

Volume numbering, 21.30L

Volume numbering in notes, 2.7B18

Volumes in different editions, 2.2, 2.7B18

Volumes in different, or lacking, series, 1.6B, 1.6J

Volumes lacking titles (formal contents notes), 2.7B18

Multiple parallel data (music), 5.1B1

Music

Duration of performance

See

Durations (music)

Music (multiple parallel data), 5.1B1

Music composers

see

Composers

Music serial numbers

see

Serial numbers (music)

Music sound recordings

see

Sound recordings

Music uniform titles

see

Uniform titles (music)

Musical excerpts

see

Excerpts (musical works)

Musical instruments, 25.30B4, 25.30B5

Musical presentation statements, 5.3

As statements of responsibility, 5.2B1, 5.3

In two or more languages or scripts, 5.3

Inseparable parts of other areas, 5.3

Musical presentation statements vs. edition statements, 5.2B1

Transcription, 5.3

Musical works, 21.18B

Cross references for different titles or variants of the title, 26.4B1

References for collective titles, 26.4B4

Reference for misattributed, 21.4C1, 26.4B

Musical works (excerpts)

see

Excerpts (musical works)

Musicians

Resolving conflicts, 22.19

— N —

NACO

Linking references on name authority records, 26

Name Authority Cooperative Project

see

NACO

Name authority records

008/29, 26

Cataloger-generated references

see

Cataloger-generated references

Linking references

see

Linking references (headings)

Ongoing conferences, 24.7B

Reasons for updating (forms of Arabic numerals), C.1

Related bodies not in LC ("[no publs. in LC database]"), 26.3B-C

Name/title references, 26.4

Named vs. unnamed meetings, 21.1B1

Names

see also

Personal names

Corporate names

Geographic names

National bibliographies

Series statements appearing only in national bibliographies, 1.6A2

Index

National Coordinated Cataloging Operations

see

NACO

National Library of Canada

Corporate names, 24.1

Geographic names, 23.2

National Library of Medicine

Personal name headings (usage different from LC), 22.3A

Nature of resource, 1.0

Nature, scope, or artistic form notes, 2.7B1

New editions

see

Editions

Nicknames

On title pages with real names, 22.2A

Use (simultaneously with real names), 22.2A

Night clubs, 24.1

NLC

see

National Library of Canada

"No more published," 2.5B21

"[No publs. in LC database]," 26.3B-C

Nobility (titles)

see

Titles of address, etc.

Non-access areas

Forms of Arabic numerals, C.1

Initials, initialisms, and acronyms in, 1.0C

Spacing after periods and abbreviations, 1.0C

Non-classical music collections (omission of analytical added entries), 25.34

"Non-collection," 25.1

Non-government bodies (unqualified), 24.4C

Non-Gregorian dates

see

Gregorian and non-Gregorian dates

Non-MARC bibliographic records

see also

Nonroman languages/scripts bibliographic records

Title access, 21.30J

Nonroman languages/scripts bibliographic records

see also

Non-MARC bibliographic records

Bibliography notes, 2.7B18
Contents notes, 2.7B18
Corporate names (romanization), 24.1B
"i.e." and "et al.," B.4
Language and script notes, 1.7B2
Nonroman elements on otherwise fully romanized records (notes), 1.7A3
Notes, 1.7A3
Series added entries, 21.30L
Series parallel titles, 1.6C

Norwegian (Language name)

Headings, 25.5C
Notes, 1.7B2

Notes

see also

[Specific type of note]

Accompanying materials, 1.5E1, 6.7B11
Added entries (justification), 2.7B18
Added title pages, 2.7B4
Alternate media, 6.7B16
Appendices, 2.7B18
"At head of title" notes, 12.7B7.1
Belles lettres items, 2.7B1
Bibliographic history (integrating resources), 12.7B8
Bibliography notes, 2.7B18
Binders' titles, 2.7B4
"Bound with" notes, 1.7B21
Changes in other title information (integrating resources), 12.7B6.2
Changes in parallel titles (integrating resources), 12.7B5.2
Changes in places of publication (serials), 12.7B11.2
Changes in title other than title proper (integrating resources), 12.7B4.1
Changes in title proper (integrating resources) and ISSNs, 12.7B4.2
Citing other editions and works, 1.7A4
Citing personal names, 1.7A4, 1.7B6
Citing serials, 1.7A4
Citing titles, 1.7A4
Containers (sound recordings), 6.7B10
"Continued by ...," 12.7B8a)
Copies being described, 1.7B20
Copies in LC's holdings, 1.7B20

- Copy-specific notes, 1.7B20
- Credits, 1.7A3
- Dates of first issues later than publication dates of subsequent issues (serials), 1.4F8
- Dates of production, 7.4F2, 7.7B7, 8.4F2, 8.7B7
- Dates of release or transmittal, 2.7B9
- Designations (serials) in notes, 12.7A2
- Discographies, 2.7B18
- Dissertations (terms for degrees), 1.7A3, 1.7B13
- Duration of performance (music), 5.7B10
- Durations (contents), 8.7B18
- Earlier/later editions, 1.7A4
- Edition and history (music), 5.7B7
- Edition information gleaned from texts, 2.2B3
- Electronic reproductions, 1.11A
- Electronic serials that don't retain earlier titles, 12.7B4.2
- Errata slips, 2.7B18
- Filmographies, 2.7B18
- For certain languages and scripts, 1.7B2
- Foreign films, etc., 7.7B9
- Form of composition and uniform titles, 5.7B1, 6.7B1
- Formal and informal contents notes, 2.7B18
- Formal terms (contents, etc.—capitalization), 1.7A3
- Formats, 1.7A1, 2.7B18
- Frequency notes, 12.7B1
- Hebrew texts (English titles on verso of title pages), 2.7B4
- Identification of iterations (integrating resources) in notes, 12.7A2

- Imperfect copies
 - see*
 - Imperfect copies**

- Indexes, 2.7B18
- Initial articles, 1.0
- Intended audience notes/intellectual levels, 2.7B14
- Item described (Multipart items), 1.7B23
- Item described (serials and integrating resources), 12.7B23
- Items reproduced, 1.7A4
- Iterations (integrating resources) in notes, 12.7A2
- Language notes, 1.7B2
- Language of notes (continuing resources), 12.7A2
- "Large print ed." in edition statements, 1.2B3
- Lecture series, 1.6
- Limited editions, 2.7B7
- Linking different editions, 1.7A4
- Linking notes (serials), 12.7B8
- Literary form notes (languages requiring), 2.7B1
- Local notes, 1.7B20
- Loose-leaf services, 12.0

Macroreproductions, 1.11A
 Medium of performance and uniform titles, 5.7B1, 6.7B1
 Microreproductions, Chapter 11
 Multipart items (volumes in different editions), 2.2
 Named and unnamed meetings (unmade notes), 26.3B-C
 Nature, scope, or artistic form notes, 2.7B1
 New editions vs. republications, 2.7B7
 Nonroman data, 1.7A3
 Numbered copies, 2.7B7
 Omissions, 2.7B18
 On nonroman scripts/languages bibliographic records, 2.7B18
 "Originally published ...," 2.7B7
 Other title information, 1.1G3, 2.7B18
 Paginations, 2.7B18
 Phrases on title pages referring to appendices, subsidiary texts, etc., 1.1E
 Physical description (sound recordings), 6.7B10
 "Previously published" vs. "Originally published," 2.7B7
 Privately printed items, 1.4D1
 Publication, distribution, etc., areas (serials), 12.7B11.2
 Punctuation, 1.7A1
 Punctuation (formal contents notes), 2.7B18

Quoted notes

see

Quoted notes

Recording multiple serial numbering systems, 12.3E1

Referring to other works or manifestations of the same work, 1.7A4

Republication notes

see

Republication notes

Republications vs. new editions, 2.7B7

Revised editions, 1.7A4

Script notes, 1.7B2

Series numbering from cataloging data, 1.6G

Series statements (only in bibliographies), 1.6A2

Series statements (only in publishers' listings), 1.6A2

Series statements (only on jackets), 1.6A2

Series statement (only on labels or stamps), 1.6A2

Several republications in one volume, 2.7B7

Sign languages, 1.7B2

Single republication in one volume, 2.7B7

Spelling, 1.7A3

Stamps or labels, 1.4A2

Statements of responsibility, 2.7B18

Summaries, 1.7A3, 1.7B2

Index

Summaries in other languages, 2.7B18
Supplements (series or serials), 1.5E1, 21.30G
Tables of contents languages, 1.7B2
Theses (terms for degrees), 1.7A3, 1.7B13
Translations, 1.7B2
Used to record imperfections or special features (monographs), 1.7B20
Variant titles (definition and sources), 2.7B4
Vocalized title pages, 1.7B2
When to provide (formal and informal contents notes), 2.7B18
"With" notes, 1.7B21

Numbered copies being cataloged (notes), 2.7B7

Numbering in serial titles, 12.1B7

Numbers

see also

Arabic numerals

Opus numbers

Ordinal numbers in series statements

Serial numbers (music)

Serials

Series numbering

Arabic numerals vs. romanization in romanized Chinese, Japanese, and Korean headings, C.5C

Dates in titles proper (Japanese), C.5C

Not associated with series titles (monographs and serials), 1.6

Ordinal numbers, C.8

Serial/series titles, 12.1B7

Titles proper (access), 21.30J

Transcription, C.1

Used to designate subordinate bodies, 24.1

Numbers of volumes

see

Extent of items

Physical description areas

Nursing homes, 24.1

— O —

Official languages

see

Languages (official)

Old age homes, 24.1

Old catalog headings (references)

see

Linking references (headings)

Omission (marks)

see

Ellipses

Ongoing conferences

see

Conferences, meetings, etc.

Open entries

see

Closing open entries

Multipart items

Series added entries

Opera companies, houses, etc. (added entries), 21.29D, 21.30E

Opera houses, 24.1

Optional or alternative provisions (decisions), 1.1C, 1.1E5, 1.1F11, 1.2B5, 1.2C4, 1.2C5, 1.2E3, 1.4D2, 1.4D5, 1.4E, 1.4F5, 1.4F7, 1.4F8, 1.4G4, 1.5A3, 1.5B4, 1.5D2, 1.5E1, 1.6G3, 1.8E1, 1.10D1, 2.1C, 2.2B3, 2.2B4, 2.4D1, 2.4E, 2.4G2, 2.5B23, 2.5C2, 2.5C5, 2.7B4, 2.8C, 3.1C, 3.1G4, 3.2B3, 3.2B4, 3.3B1, 3.3B2, 3.3B4, 3.3C2, 3.3D, 3.4D1, 3.4E, 3.4G2, 3.5B2, 3.5B4, 3.5C6, 3.5D1, 3.5D3, 3.5D5, 3.7B4, 3.8, 4.1C, 4.1F2, 4.2B3, 4.5B2, 4.5B3, 4.7B4, 5.1C, 5.2B3, 5.2B4, 5.3, 5.4D1, 5.4E, 5.4G2, 5.5B1, 5.5B3, 5.7B4, 6.1C, 6.1G4, 6.2B3, 6.2B4, 6.4D1, 6.4E, 6.4G2, 6.5B1, 6.5C8, 6.7B4, 7.1B2, 7.1C, 7.1G4, 7.2B3, 7.2B4, 7.4D1, 7.4E, 7.4F2, 7.4G2, 7.5B1, 7.5B2, 7.7B4, 8.1C, 8.2B3, 8.2B4, 8.4D1, 8.4E, 8.4G2, 8.5B6, 8.5C1g), 8.7B4, 9.1C, 9.1G1, 9.1G4, 9.2B3, 9.2B5, 9.4D1, 9.4E, 9.4F4, 9.4G2, 9.5B1, 9.5B3, 9.5C2, 9.5D1, 9.7B4, 10.1C, 10.2B3, 10.2B4, 10.4D1, 10.4E, 10.4G3, 10.5B1, 10.7B4, 11.1C, 11.2B4, 11.1G1, 11.1G4, 11.2B3, 11.4D1, 11.4E, 11.5B1, 11.7B4, 12.1C, 12.2B3, 12.4D1, 12.4E, 12.4G3, 12.7B4.1, 12.7B8a), 12.7B8c), 12.7B8d), 21.18B, 21.27, 21.28A, 21.29G, 21.30L, 21.36C1-9, 22.3C, 22.18A, 24.1B, 24.3A, 24.7B2, 25.2A, 25.5D, 26.1A, 26.2D2. 26.6

Options

see

Optional or alternative provisions (decisions)

Opus numbers

Parallel title statements, 5.1B1

Uniform titles (abbreviations, numerical transcription), 25.31A1

Orchestras of opera companies

see

Opera companies, houses, etc. (added entries)

Order

Added entries, 21.29

Index

- Information on chief sources (publication, distribution, etc., areas), 1.4D1
- Multiple ISBNs, 1.8
- Ordinal numbers**, C.8
 - In series statements, 1.6G
- Original editions of republications**
 - Dates and/or places of publication appearing with titles proper, 1.11C
 - Dates of publication (notes), 2.7B7
 - Notes, 2.7B7
 - Sources of information, 2.7B7
- Orphanages**, 24.1
- Orthographic reforms**
 - Corporate names, 24.2C
 - Personal names, 22.3D
 - Series statements, 25.3A
 - Titles proper, 25.3A
 - Transcription, 25.3A
 - Uniform titles (monographs), 25.3A
- Other title information**
 - see also*
 - Other title information (music)**
 - Changes in other title information (integrating resources), 12.7B6.2
 - Formal contents notes, 2.7B18
 - Linking notes (serials), 12.7B8
 - Main title-part title, 1.1E5
 - More than one language, AACR2 1.1E5
 - Only one language, 1.1E5
 - Phrases on title pages referring to appendices, subsidiary texts, etc., 1.1E
 - Single statements applying to several titles proper, 1.1G3
- Other title information (music)**
 - Musical presentation statements, 5.2B1
 - Distinctive titles, 5.1B1
 - Generic titles with partial repetition in multiple languages, 5.1B1
 - Repetitions (partial) in multiple languages, 5.1B1

— P —

Paginations

see also

- Extent of items**
- Physical description areas**
- Unpaged items**

Complicated or irregular paginations, 2.5B8

Formal contents notes, 2.7B18
Informal contents notes, 2.7B19
Multipart items, 2.5B20
“Of music,” 5.5B1
Parts (printed music), 5.5B2

Parades, 24.7**Parallel titles**

Changes (integrating resources), 12.7B5.2
Generic titles proper partially repeated in multiple languages, 5.1B1
Other title information (one language), 1.1E5
Parallel other title information (single titles proper), AACR2 1.1E5
Recording, 1.1D2
Series, 1.6C
Series/subseries, 1.6H6

Parentheses

see also

Qualifiers**[Type of items] as qualifiers**

Additions of full forms of initials (personal names), 22.18A
Married women using married names and enclosing forenames in parentheses, 22.2A
Scientific names of plants and animals (capitalization and punctuation), A.25
Used in personal names, 22.2A

Parishes (ecclesiastic), 24.3G**Park districts, 23.1****Parks as agencies, 24.1****Partial contents**

see

Contents notes (formal)**Particles**

see

Prefixes/particles**Personal names****Parts (music)**

see also

Excerpts (musical works)

Paginations, 5.5B2

Parts of a work

Designations of parts in titles proper (title access), 21.30J
Radio and television series, 25.6B3
Selecting the title, 25.32A1
Uniform titles, 25.6A, 25.6A2
Uniform titles (references), 26.4D2

Index

Performers

see also

Conductors (separate entities ...)

Principal performers

Accompanists as separate entities from corporate bodies accompanied (main and added entries), 21.23C, 21.29D

Accompanying ensembles (unnamed—added entries for individuals), 21.29D

Added entries, 21.29D

Added entries (many performing the same functions), 21.29D

Added entries (omission when belonging to the performing groups given added entries), 21.29D

Added entries (omission when given main entries as principal performers), 21.29D

Added entries (omission when participating in small number of works), 21.29D

Added entries (omission when participation is minor), 21.29D

As members of performing groups given main or added entries, 21.23C

Composers performing own works (added entries), 21.29D

Conductors as separate entities from corporate bodies conducted (main and added entries), 21.23C, 21.29D

Individual performer's name appears in conjunction with the name of a performing group, 24.1

Individuals in unnamed accompanying ensembles (added entries), 21.29D

Jazz ensembles (added entries for individual members), 21.29D

Opera companies, houses, etc., 21.29D

Performers not considered contemporary authors, 22.2

Prominence (in relation to other performers and to works performed), 21.23C

Prominence (determining added entries), 21.29D

Sound recordings (definition), 21.23C

Statements of responsibility (popular music), 5.1F1

Statements of responsibility (participation goes beyond performance, execution, interpretation), 6.1F1

Performing groups as authors, 21.1B2

Periods

In initials, initialisms, and acronyms, 1.0C

Spacing conventions, 1.0C

Periodicals

see

Serials

Occasionally analyzable serials

Personal authorship

see

Main entry headings (personal names)

[Type of item]

Personal names

see also

Main entry headings (personal names)

Personal names (determination of commonly known forms)

Personal names (different names or forms of name)

Revisions to established headings (personal names)

AACR2 "compatible" guidelines, 22.1

AACR2 forms of name when headings already in use in the catalog, 22.3A

Abbreviations (forenames or surnames), 22.1B

Abbreviations (spacing and punctuation), 22.1B

Abbreviations (surnames by Spanish- and Hungarian-language authors), 22.5C2

Added entries for persons mentioned in the title proper or other title information of musical works, 21.30F

Additions

see

Additions to personal names

Additions in parentheses of full forms of initials, 22.18A

"Author's" preference, 22.3A

Arabic names, 22.4, 22.22

Arabic names (English-language reference sources), 22.3C, 22.22

Bishops, etc. (saints), 22.16C

"c" subfields (delimiting), 22.5D

Colophons (forms of name found in items published in the USSR), 22.3A

Composers as authors, 22.1B

Conflicts

see

Conflicts

Consisting of all initials (punctuation and references), 1.0C, 22.10, 26.1, 26.2B2, 26.2B4

Copyright statements, 22.3A

Corporate names (references), 26.3A3

Cross references

see

Cross references

Cyrillic surnames, 22.3C

Dates in headings

see

Additions to personal names

Delimiters, 22.1B, 22.5D

- Derived from nonroman scripts (writers in roman-alphabet languages, 22.3C
- Determination of commonly known forms
 - see*
 - Personal names (determination of commonly known forms)**
- Different forms in one work, 22.3A
- Directly entered names (delimiting), 22.1B
- Double surnames (entries under second elements, forenames lacking, 22.5C4

- Double surnames (entries under second element, forenames lacking— punctuation and references), 22.1B
- Dutch names (entry elements of authors writing in English), 22.5D1
- English-language forms of name written in nonroman scripts, 22.3C
- Entered under elements following prefixes (spacing and punctuation), 22.1B
- Entry elements (Spanish and Hungarian names), 22.5C2
- Entry elements (references from different elements), 26.2
- Ethiopian names (entry and references), 22.8
- Famous people too recent for reference sources (nonroman scripts), 22.3C
- Filipino names (form, references, and diacritics), 22.5A
- "fl." (resolving conflicts), 22.17, 22.19
- Forenames abbreviated (non-initials), 22.1B
- Forenames and phrases (punctuation and references for exceptional cases), 22.8A1
- Forenames and titles of nobility, 22.6
- Forenames and initials (no surnames), 22.10
- Full forms of initials added in parentheses, 22.18A
- Fullness of forenames, 22.3A, 22.18A
- Function designations, 21.0D, 21.27, 21.36C
- Government officials acting in official capacities, 24.20E
- Heads of state (references), 26.3B-C
- Hebrew surnames, 22.3C, 22.4
- Hungarian-language authors (abbreviations of surnames), 22.5C2
- Hungarian married women with compound surnames, 22.5C5
- Indic names (romanized) with initials, 22.3C2
- Individual performer's name appears in conjunction with the name of a performing group, 24.1
- Indonesian names (entry elements), 22.26C1c)
- Indonesian names (references), 22.26C1c)
- Initial articles, 22.4
- Initials (full forms added in parentheses), 22.5C2, 22.18A
- Initials and abbreviations (transcription), 1.0C
- Initials (spacing and punctuation), 22.1B
- Initials (Spanish and Hungarian surnames), 22.5C2
- Japanese priests, 22.16D
- Joint pseudonyms (references), 26.2D
- Lacking forenames, 22.15A
- Lacking forenames (double surnames, entry under second element), 22.5C4

Lacking forenames (double surnames, entry under second element— punctuation and references, 22.1B
 Latest forms, 22.3A
 Married women (Hungarian) with compound surnames, 22.5C5
 Married women (maiden names enclosed within parentheses), 22.2A
 Married women (terms of address in names), 22.15B
 Married women using husbands' forenames (full form of initials known), 22.18A
 More than one language (doubtful cases), 22.3C
 Multiple given names (additions for entries not under first elements), 22.8A2
 Multiple headings, 22.2B
 Multiple real names (used in different works), 22.2
 Musicians (resolving conflicts), 22.19
 Names unknown, 22.11D
 Nicknames and real names (used simultaneously), 22.2A
 Nicknames (parentheses, etc., with real names), 22.2A
 Nonroman script names (English-language form likely), 22.3C
 Nonwriters, 22.1B
 North Indian names, 22.25B1
 Orthographic reforms (names of persons), 22.3D
 Parentheses, 22.2A
 Persons known only by phrases or appellations, 22.1B
 Persons of religious vocations entered under given names (titles), 22.16D
 Phrases associated (non-English reference sources), 22.8A1
 Phrases used as personal name headings (name unknown), 22.11D, 22.19
 Portuguese names (forenames lacking), 22.1B, 22.5C4
 Prefixes and particles (reference structures), 26.2
 Prefixes and particles (spacing and punctuation), 22.1B
 Prefixes and particles (placement of delimiters), 22.5D
 Prosecuting attorneys, 24.23
 Pseudonyms, 22.2, 22.2B

References

see

Cross references

Roman-alphabet language authors names derived from nonroman scripts), 22.3C
 Saints (uniqueness of names in reference sources), 22.13B
 Saints who are also bishops, etc., 22.16C
 Simultaneous use of different names (updating pre-1981 headings to AACR2), 26
 Simultaneous use of several names, 22.2B
 Somalian names (entry and references), 22.8
 Spirits of real persons, 22.14
 Spanish-language authors (abbreviations of surnames), 22.5C2
 Spanish-language authors (abbreviations of surnames—references, 26.2
 Surnames and terms of address used (unused forenames known), 22.5D
 Surnames in corporate names, 24.4B
 Surnames only used (authors), 22.1B
 Surnames only, or surnames and terms of address, used, 22.5D, 22.15A

Index

Surnames only, or surnames and terms of address, used (punctuation and spacing), 22.1B
Surnames only, or surnames and terms of address, used (placement of delimiters), 22.5D
Surnames without forenames (entry under last element), 22.5C4
Surnames without forenames (entry under last element—punctuation and references), 22.1B, 22.5D
Terms of address, etc., and surnames only used, 22.1B, 22.15A
Terms of address, etc. (resolving conflicts), 22.17, 22.19
Theses (forms of name used on theses), 22.3A
Titles of nobility as entry elements of names, 22.6
Titles of nobility vs. personal names, 26.6
Unused names added to resolve conflicts, 22.17
Urdu names, 22.4
Writers using several different names, 22.2B
Yiddish surnames, 22.3C, 22.4
Zairian names (entry and references), 22.8

Personal names (determination of commonly known forms)

Early writers vs. modern reference sources, 22.1B
Fullness of forenames, 22.3A
Persons known only by phrases or appellations, 22.1B
Works issued during and after lifetime, 22.1B

Personal names (different names or forms of name)

AACR2 forms of name when headings already in use in catalog (not yet coded AACR2), 22.3A
Composers, 22.1B
Different forms in one work, 22.3A
Forms most commonly found (fullness of forenames), 22.3A
Fullest forms (forenames), 22.3A
Fullness of names (general guidelines), 22.3A
Multiple real names, 22.2
Multiple real names treated as pseudonyms, 22.2
Persons writing in more than one language (doubtful cases), 2.3B1
Pseudonyms, 22.2B
Simultaneous use of different names, 22.2A, 22.2B

Personal names (variant forms)

see also

Personal names (determination of commonly known forms)
Personal names (different names or forms of name)

Citations on name authority records, 26.2
Copyright statements, 22.3A
Different forms in one work, 22.3A
References, 26.2
Variations in fullness of forenames, 22.3A

Photocopies of published works (texts, graphic items, etc.)

see

Macroreproductions

Phrases

Commonly associated with names entered under given name (punctuation and references for exceptional cases), 22.8A1

Descriptive phrases for pre-20th century persons, 22.19

Non-English sources commonly associated with names entered under given names, 22.8A1

Personal name headings (names of persons unknown), 22.1B, 22.11D

Phrases vs. series titles, 1.6

Physical description areas

see also

Extent of items

Paginations

Accompanying materials, 1.5E1

Frame counts, 8.5B2

Items in different formats, 1.10, 1.5A3

Leaves or pages of plates, 2.5B9

"Made up" collections, 2.5B18

"Of music," 5.5B1

Production method (cartographic materials), 3.5C3

Recording and reproduction characteristics, 6.5C8

Sound channels, 6.5C7

Specific material designation for updating loose-leafs, 12.5B1

Place names

see

Geographic names

Places of publication

see also

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

Abbreviations of state names, B.14

CIP items at the galley stage, 1.4D4

Planetariums, 24.1

Plans (Programs), 24.1

Plate numbers

Definition, 5.7B19

Location of notes, 5.7B19

Plates

Recording leaves or pages of plates, 2.5B9

Index

"Plucked instruments" vs. "plectral instruments" (music uniform titles), 25.30B5

Poorhouses, 24.1

Pop, folk, ethnic, jazz sound recordings (analytical added entries), 25.34

Popular music folios (main entry), 21.23C

Port authorities, 24.1

Prefixes/particles

see also

Personal names

Delimiters, 22.5D

Personal names (references), 22.5D, 26.2

Personal names entered under element following (punctuation and spacing), 22.1B

Preliminaries

Glossary entry amplified, Appendix D

Source for series statement, 1.6A2

Prices

see

Terms of availability

Principal performers

see also

Performers

Guidelines, 21.23C

Identification, 21.23C

Printing dates

see

Dates of manufacture

Privately printed works

Notes, 1.4D1

Publishers, 1.4D1

Production method, 3.5C3

Program notes/inserts, 6.7B11

Projects, 24.1

Prominent sources

Conference names, 21.30E

Determination of access points, 21.0B

Performers (added entries), 21.29D

Principal performers, 21.23C

Proposed bodies, 24.2

Prosecuting attorneys of jurisdictions, 24.23

Psalters, 21.11B, 21.39, 25.18A

Pseudonyms

Multiple real names treated as pseudonyms, 22.2

On non-separately-published items, 22.2B

Use of several pseudonyms, 22.2B

Public celebrations, pageants, anniversaries, 24.7

Publication

see

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

Publishers

Publication dates

see

Dates of publication

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

see also

Dates of publication

Distributors

Places of publication

Publishers

Bodies associated with the publication of items, 1.4D4

Bracketing, 1.4G

Capitalization, A.7A

CIP items at the galley stage, 1.4A2, 1.4D4

Elements presented obscurely, 1.4A2

Elements to include/exclude, 1.4D2, 1.4D3, 1.4D4

Hierarchies of commercial publishers, 1.4D2, 1.4D4

Initial articles, 1.0

More than one entity with the same/different functions, 1.4E

Publication information for original editions appearing with titles proper of reprints,
1.11C

Transcription, 1.4D4

Publishers

see also

Distributors

Publication, distribution, etc., areas

Addresses (monographs), 1.4C7

Bodies associated with the publication of items, 1.4D4

Change in name of publisher (serials), 12.4D2

CIP items at the galley stage, 1.4D5

Elements to omit from names (personal names), 1.4D2

Government printers, 1.4D1

Hierarchies, 1.4D2

Multiple publishers, 1.4D4

Parent companies and subsidiaries named in items, 1.4D4

Phrases denoting functions, 1.4E

Index

Private entities, 1.4D1
Published for ... by ..., 1.4D3
Publishers and subsidiaries named on items, 1.4D4
Serial titles as publishers, 1.4D2
[S.n.] ("nonromanizing" languages), 1.4D6
Unknown (nonroman script languages), 1.4D6

Publishers (Producers) as qualifiers to uniform titles, 25.5B, 25.8

Publishers' numbers (music)

Definition, 5.7B19
Location of notes, 5.7B19
Multipart items, 5.7B19
Publishers' names or other verbal designations, 5.7B19
Transcription, 5.7B19
Two or more distinct numbers, 5.7B19

Publishers' numbers (sound recordings)

Location of notes, 6.7B19
Set numbers and individual disc numbers, 6.7B19
Transcription, 6.7B19

Punctuation

see also

[Various types of publications]

Spacing conventions

Ampersands in corporate names, 24.1
Arabic numerals, C.1
Between areas of description, 1.0C
Contents notes (formal and informal), 2.7B18
Corporate names, 24.1
Corporate or meeting names include ISBD-type punctuation marks, 1.1B1
Dashes in corporate names, 24.1

Delimiters

see

Delimiters

Ellipses

see

Ellipses

Ends of areas of description, 1.0C
Hyphens in corporate names, 24.1
ISBD-type punctuation marks appearing on title pages, 1.1B1
ISBNs, 1.8
Notes, 1.7A1
Personal names (entry and references), 22.1B
Personal names consisting of initials, 22.10
Personal names entered under elements following prefixes, 22.1B

Personal names entered under given names and associated phrases, 22.8A1
Personal names entered under last element of multiple surnames lacking forenames
(entry and references), 22.1B
Personal names with abbreviations or lacking forenames, etc., 22.1B
Personal names with initials or abbreviations, 1.0C, 22.1B
Quotation marks in corporate names, 24.1
Scientific names of plants and animals, A.25
Series added entries, 21.30L
Series numbering, 1.6G
Series of words (English), 24.1
Series of words (English—in corporate names evaluated for AACR 2), 24.1
Title and statement of responsibility areas for items lacking collective titles, 1.1G3
Transcription, 1.0E, 1.1B1
"With" notes, 1.7B21
Uniform title qualifiers, 25.5B

— Q —

Qualifiers

see also

General designation qualifiers

Conflicts, 24.4C

Corporate names

see

Corporate names as qualifiers

Dates

see

Dates as qualifiers

Additions to personal names

Geographic names

see

Geographic names as qualifiers

Military installations, 23.1

Multiple qualifiers, 24.4B

Thesis notes, 1.7B13

Qualifiers (conference headings)

Conflicting ongoing named conferences, 24.7B

Dates as part of meeting names, 1.0C, 24.1, 24.7A, 24.7B

Electronic conferences, 24.7B

Local places vs. institutions, 24.7B

Index

Omitted from references, 26.3A3
Ongoing conferences, 24.7A, 24.7B

Qualifiers (corporate names)

see also

General designation qualifiers

Choice, 24.4C
Corporate names, 24.4C, 24.4C5
Corporate names in all capital letters, 24.4B, 26.1
Directly entered government bodies, 24.4C
Independent non-government bodies, 24.4C
Local churches, 24.10B
Form, 24.4C
Geographic names, 24.4C
Multiple qualifiers, 24.10B
Not required, 24.4C
References, 26.1
Required/not required by variant forms, 24.2B

Qualifiers (geographic names)

City sections, 23.4F2
Great Britain, 23.4D
Islands and island groups, 23.4B
Local places in Hawaii, 23.4F1
Names qualified have earlier/later names, 23.4B
Not needed, 23.4B
Qualifiers change names (names qualified do not), 23.4B, 24.4C4
Resolving conflicts, 23.4F1
States, provinces, etc., 23.4C
Succession of jurisdictions with the same names, 24.6
Types of jurisdictions, 24.6
Washington (State), 24.6

Qualifiers (personal names)

see

Additions to personal names

Qualifiers (uniform titles), 25.5B

Choice, 25.5B
Choreographic works, 25.5B
Collective uniform titles, 25.8, 25.5B
Corporate names, 24.4C, 25.5B
Dates, 25.5B
Edition statements, 25.5B
Electronic resources, 25.5B
Form, 25.5B
Laws, 25.15A1
Places of publication (series/serials), 25.5B

Quotation marks

Corporate names, 24.1

Quoted notes

Bibliographic, etc., 2.7B18

Dates of release or transmittal, 2.7B9

Lecture series, 1.6

Letters and/or numbers unassociated with series statements, 1.6

Nonroman data, 1.7A3

Phrases rejected as series, 1.6

Romanized data, 1.7A3

Series consisting solely of commercial publishers' names or corporate bodies' initials, 1.6

Series consisting solely of letters and/or numbers, 1.6

Sources for information quoted, 1.7A3

Use, 2.7B18

— R —

Races (Contests), 24.7**Radio and television programs**

Headings, 25.5B Appendix I

Railroads, 24.1**Rare books**

Copies, issues, editions, etc., 1.0

Descriptive cataloging of books published before 1801, 2.12-2.18

Uniform titles (incunabula), 25.14

Reciprocal notes (editions), 1.7A4**Recording and reproduction characteristics, 6.5C8****Recreation districts, 23.1****Reference evaluation**

"Compatible" headings (corporate names), 26.1

"Compatible" headings (personal names), 26.1

Corporate names entered subordinately, 24.13, 24.18

"Do not make" (keep or delete), 26

Earlier names of a corporate bodies covered by references to later names, 26.3

"General references," 26.3B-C

Guidelines (constructing references), 26.1

Government bodies entered subordinately, 24.18, TYPE 2

Initialisms, etc., 26.3B-C

Linking references

*see***Linking references (headings)**

"[No pubs. in LC database]," 26.3B-C

Scope, 26

Index

See also references, 26.3B-C
Uniform titles, 26
Unused subdivisions of corporate bodies, 26.3
Values in fixed fields, 26
Variant names (personal names), 26.2
When to evaluate, 26

Reference sources

"Conventional" vs. "other," 22.1B
Cyrillic surname headings, 22.3C
Encyclopaedia Judaica, 22.3C
English-language forms of name written in nonroman scripts, 22.3C
Hebrew and Yiddish surname headings, 22.3C
Names written in nonroman scripts, 22.3C
Nonwriters, 22.1B
Persons of recent fame (nonroman script languages), 22.3C
Saints, 22.13B
Supplying phrases or appellations for persons known only by those phrases, 22.1B
U.S. Civil War army units, 24.24A

References

see

Cross references

See also references

Regularization of i's and j's, 1.0E

Reissues or new editions, 1.0

Related work added entries

see also

Analytical added entries

Bible texts, 21.28B
Definition, 21.30M
Form and responsibilities, 21.30G
Format, 21.30M
Linking records for different editions, 1.7A4
Separately cataloged indexes (not made for main work), 21.28B
Separately published issues of periodicals, 21.30G
Serials, 21.28B, 21.30G
Special numbers to serials, 21.30G
Supplements to serials, 21.30G

Related works, 21.28A, 21.28B

"Relational" reference structures

Guidelines, 26.3B-C
Instructions and examples, 26.3B-C
"[No publs. in LC database]," 26.3B-C

Religious denominations (works), 21.1B2

Religious titles, etc.*see also***Titles of address, etc.**

Japanese priests, 22.16D

Persons of religious vocations entered under given names, 22.16D

Remainder distributors, 1.4D4**Remote access**

No longer available, 9.7B

Repositories of manuscripts

*see***Manuscripts****Reproductions (notes), 1.7A4****Republication notes**

Definition, 2.7B7

Edition statements, 2.7B7

Elements to include/omit, 2.7B7

Format, 2.7B7

Original series statements not reproduced, 2.7B7

Original editions (notes), 2.7B7

"Previously published" vs. "Originally published," 2.7B7

Series statements, 2.7B7

Sources of information, 2.7B7

Uses in CIP cataloging, 2.7B7

Republications*see also***Original editions of republications**

Dates, etc., of original editions appearing with titles proper of republications, 1.11C

Several independent publications in one volume, 2.7B7

Republications, reissues, etc. (serials or series), 25.5B

Added entry guidelines, 21.30L

Bibliographic units vs. physical units (serials), 12.5B2

Research stations, 24.1**Restaurants, 24.1****Reversed order of names, 21.6C1****Revised editions**

Changes of entry, 1.7A4

Changes of entry because of rule change, 1.7A4

Changes of title, 1.7A4

Connecting notes, 1.7A4

Previous editions not in LC, 1.7A4

Previous editions not in MARC, 1.7A4

Reciprocal notes, 1.7A4

Related work added entries, 1.7A4

Index

Revised translations

see

Translations

Revisions of established headings

see also

Conflicts

Updating pre-AACR2 headings

_____ **(personal names)**

"Author's" preference, 22.3A

Authors using multiple pseudonyms, 22.2B

Authors using multiple real names, 22.2

Coding of names ("Mrs."), 22.15B

Dates, 22.17

Full names discovered for forename initials, 22.18A

National Library of Medicine headings, 22.3A

Resolving conflicts, 22.17

Surnames only used by authors, 22.1B

Roman numerals

Titles proper (access), 21.30J

Romanizations

Arabic names, 22.22

Chinese, Japanese, and Korean numerals, C.5C

Corporate names, 24.1B

Geographic names supplied by BGN, 23.2

Headings for authors living in 20th century Israel or Palestine, 22.3C

Romanized records

see

"Romanizing" languages bibliographic records

Nonroman languages/scripts bibliographic records

"Romanizing" languages bibliographic records

Notes, 1.7A3

— S —

"Saint" in geographic names, 23.2

Saints

see also

Personal names

Reference sources, 22.13B

Unique names? 22.13B

Sales catalogs, 21.1B2
Sanitariums, 24.1
Sanitation districts, 23.1
"Scharfes s," 1.0E
School districts, 24.1
Scientific names of plants and animals (capitalization and punctuation), A.25
Script notes, 1.7B2

Seals

see

Symbols

Searching

Dates (personal names), 22.17

Second-hand dealers as distributors, 1.4D4

Second/Seconds symbols, 1.0E

Second series

see

Subseries/second series

Section titles

As titles proper, 1.6B

With introductory words (Capitalization), A.4D1

See also references

see also primarily

Cross references

Definition, 26.3B-C

Heads of state, 26.3B-C

Individuals to the group, 26.2C

Justification, 26.3B-C

Manuscript headings, 25.13

Personal names identical to established headings, 26.2C

Pseudonyms, 22.2B

Reference structures (guidelines and examples), 26.3B-C

Series, 26.5A

See references

see

Cross references

Serial numbers (music)

Titles proper or other title information, 5.1B1

Parallel statements, 5.1B1

Index

Serial titles

see also

Serials

Titles proper

Uniform titles (serials/series)

Authority records for, 26.5B
Chronological designations omitted, 12.1B7
Consisting solely of the words "Annual report," 21.30J
Elements to include and exclude, 12.1B3
Serial titles as publishers, 1.4D2

Serials

see also

Monographic series

Multipart items

Uniform titles (serials/series)

AACR2 forms needed, 21.28B
Absorptions, 12.7B6f
Added entries (collections of excerpts), 21.28B
Added entries (corporate bodies), 21.30E
Added entries (separately published issues of periodicals), 21.30G
Added entries (series), 21.30L
Added entries (special numbers), 21.30G
Added entries (supplements), 21.30G
Almanacs (U.S.), 17th-19th century, 21.2C
Alphabetic and/or numeric designations, 12.3, 12.3B1, 12.3C1
Alphabetic and/or numeric designations (lacking), 12.3B1
"At head of title" notes, 12.7B7.1
Authority records for, 26.5B
Basic description, 12.0B1
Bibliographic units vs. physical units, 12.5B2
Changes in edition information, 12.2F1
Changes in places of publication, 12.7B11.2
Changes in name of publisher, 12.4D2
Changes in titles proper (definition), 21.2C
Changes in titles proper vs. variations, 21.2C
Changes in type and extent of resource area notes (electronic serials), 12.7A2
Changes in uniform titles, 25.5B
Changes of issuing bodies, 25.5B
Changes of persons or bodies responsible (serials and integrating resources), 21.3B
Chronological designations, 12.1B7, 12.3C1 12.3C4 12.3D1, 12.3G1
Chronological designations (lacking), 12.3B1
Chronological designations (several systems), 12.3E1
Common titles and section titles, 12.1B4, 25.5B
Conflicts, 25.5B
"Continues/Continued by" notes, 12.7B8a

-
- Corporate body qualifiers (uniform titles), 25.5B
 - Date qualifiers (uniform title), 25.5B
 - Dates of absorption, 12.7B8d
 - Dates of immediately succeeding serials, 12.7B8a
 - Dates of publication (first issues later than dates of subsequent issues), 1.4F8
 - Dates of numbering at end of titles proper, 12.1B7
 - Definition amplified, 1.0
 - Edition statements (two or more languages or scripts), 12.2B3
 - Editions, 12.7B8f
 - Electronic resources (common titles and section titles), 12.1B4
 - Electronic resources (uniform titles), 25.5B
 - Electronic serials that don't retain earlier titles/bodies, 12.0B1
 - Electronic serials that don't retain earlier titles (notes), 12.7B4.2
 - Ellipses, 12.1B7
 - Entries under corporate bodies, 21.1B2
 - Excerpts (treatment), 21.28B
 - Forms of numbering (related work added entries), 21.30G
 - Forms of serial names (linking notes), 12.7B8
 - Forms of series added entries, 21.30L
 - Frequency notes, 12.7B1
 - Hardcover editions of selected issues, 1.6
 - In multiple series, 1.6J
 - Indexes, 1.5E1, 21.28B
 - Integrating resources, 1.0
 - Internal numbering, 12.3B1
 - Issued in cumulations, 12.0
 - Issued in parts, 12.0
 - Item described note, 12.7B23
 - Language of notes, 12.7A2
 - Linking notes, 12.7B8
 - Linking notes (uniform titles), 25.5B
 - Microreproductions (LC policy), Chapter 11

 - Monographic series
 - see*
 - Monographic series**
 - Series**
 - Series ...**

 - Newspapers, 12.0
 - No designation on first issue or part, 12.3D1
 - Nonprint serials (prescribed sources of information), 12.0B3
 - Notes (first issues with dates of publication later than those of subsequent issues), 1.4F8
 - Notes (frequency), 12.7B1
 - Notes on changes in type and extent of resource area (electronic serials), 12.7A2
 - Notes (publication, distribution, etc. areas), 12.7B11.2
 - Numbered series, 12.6B1

Index

Numbering (at end of titles proper), 12.1B7
Numbering (series added entries), 12.6B1
Numbering (series statements), 12.6B1
Numbering (system changes), 12.3G1
Numbering grammatically integrated with title proper, 25.5B
Numeric and/or alphabetic designations, 12.3, 12.3B1, 12.3G1
Numeric and/or alphabetic designations (lacking), 12.3B1, 12.3G1
Numeric and/or alphabetic designations (notes), 12.7A2
Numeric and/or alphabetic designations (several systems), 12.3E1
Personal authority, 21.1A2
Physical units vs. bibliographic units, 12.5B2
Place of publication changes, 12.7B11.2
Place of publication qualifiers (uniform titles), 25.5B
Prescribed sources of information (nonprint serials), 12.0B3
Publisher statements (capitalization), A.7A
Related work added entries, 21.28A, 21.30G
Reprints, reissues, etc., 1.0, 12.0, 12.0B1, 12.5B2, 25.5B
Retrospective serials treatment, 1.0
Section titles, 12.1B4, 25.5B
Separate records (criteria), 12.0
Separate records (numbering systems change), 12.3G1
Session laws (U.S. states) and successive entry, 21.2C
Signs and symbols (first five words of titles proper), 21.30J
Source citations, 26.3B-C
Splits, 12.7B8c
Subseries in numbered main series, 12.6B1
Substitute title pages, 12.0B2
Successive designations, 12.3G1
Successive entries, 25.5B
Supplements, 1.5E1
Supplements (added entries), 21.30G
Supplements (uniform titles needed), 25.5B
Supplements to other serials, 21.28B
Title page substitutes, 12.0B2

Titles

see

Serial titles

Uniform titles (serials/series)

Travel guides, 1.0

Treatment, 1.0

Variations vs. changes in titles, 21.2C

"With" notes, 1.7B21

Serials vs. monographs vs. integrating resource, 1.0

Series*see also primarily***Monographic series****Multipart items****Serial titles****Serials****Series added entries****Series numbering****Series statements****Series titles****Uniform titles (serials/series)**

Added entries (issuing bodies), 21.30E
 Analysis (music), 13.3
 Appearing only in bibliographies, 1.6A2
 Appearing only in publishers' listings, 1.6A2
 Appearing only in some items. 1.6B
 Appearing only on jackets, 1.6A2
 Appearing only on labels or stamped in items, 1.6A2
 Changes of issuing bodies, 25.5B
 Collected musical works of composers, 21.30L
 Different physical media, 1.6
 Inaccuracy in series title proper, 1.6B
 Integrating resources in more than one series, 21.30L
 ISSNs, 1.6F
 Lacking analyzable titles (analyzed, classified separately), 13.3
 Multiple series on multipart items or serials, 1.6J
 Personal authors (traced), 21.30L
 Phrases, etc., 1.6
 Places/publishers vary, 25.5B
 Published in more than one place, 25.5B
 References on authority records, 26.5A
 Reprint, reissue, etc., 25.5B
 Section titles without titles common to all sections (recording), 1.6B
 Series and subseries (uniform title qualifiers), 25.5B
 Series or phrases, 1.6
 Series vs. subseries (ISSN for main series only), 1.6H7
 Series vs. subseries (not appearing together on the items), 1.6H
 Single statement encompassing more than one series, 1.6B, 21.30L
 Subseries, 1.6H

Technical report series

*see***Technical report series**

Index

Titles

see

Series titles

Uniform titles (serials/series)

Added entry decisions (reasons to change), 21.30L

When to trace, 21.30L

Series added entries

see also

Uniform titles (serials/series)

Collected musical works of composers, 21.30L

Form, 21.30L

Guidelines, 21.30L

Main series and indirectly entered subseries, 21.30L

Numbering, 21.30L

Punctuation, 21.30L

Related series, 21.30G

Reprint editions, 21.30L

Series added entries vs. series statements

Composition, 21.30L

Punctuation and spacing, 1.0C

Series area

see

Series statements

Series-like phrases

Qualifiers, 25.5B

Series numbering

see also

Serials

Numbering ...

Abbreviations, 1.6G, B.5

Appearing only in bibliographies, 1.6G

Appearing only in cataloging data, 1.6G

Collected musical works of composers, 21.30L

Editions with identical numbering, 1.6G

Equal signs, 1.6G

Grammatically integrated with title proper, 25.5B

How to record in series added entries, 21.30L

Incomplete multipart items, 21.30L

Inferred numbering, 1.6G

Letter(s) at end of title proper, 1.6B

- Letters in series numbering, 1.6G
- More than one system of designation, 1.6G
- New sequence, 1.6G1
- Ordinal number abbreviations, 1.6G
- Parallel numbering, 1.6G
- Superscript characters, 1.6G
- Supplements, 21.30G
- Within specific activities, 1.6G

Series numbering vs. subseries

- Appearing only on CIP data sheets, 1.6A2
- Appearing only on jackets, 1.6A2
- Appearing only on labels or stamped in items, 1.6A2
- Appearing only in publishers' listings, 1.6A2
- Consisting solely of corporate body names, 1.6
- Consisting solely of initials, 1.6
- Consisting solely of numbers and/or letters, 1.6
- Containing words in old orthographies, 25.3A
- Initial articles, 1.0, 21.30L
- Phrases rejected as series, 1.6A2
- Prefaces as sources, 1.6A2
- Related series, 21.30G
- Section titles without titles common to all sections, 1.6B
- Sources, 1.6A2
- Spacing and punctuation, 1.0C
- Statements of responsibility, 1.6E1
- Supplements in series statements, 25.5B

Series statements

- More than one, 1.6J
- Single statement encompassing more than one series, 1.6B, 21.30L

Series statements vs. headings for series

- Added entry guidelines, 21.30L

Series title pages (definition), 12.0B1**Series titles**

see also

Uniform titles (serials/series)

- Appearing in some parts of items classed as a collection, 1.6B
- Appearing in two or more languages, 1.6B
- Changes or variations, 21.2C
- Consisting solely of corporate body names or initials, 1.6, 25.5B
- Embedded in other text, 1.6B
- Letter(s) at the end of the title proper, 1.6B
- Numbering grammatically integrated with title proper, 25.5B
- Section titles without titles common to all sections, 1.6B
- Series titles or phrases? 1.6
- Series titles grammatically connected to title of item, 1.6

Series titles (variant forms)

Index

Languages, 1.6C
Lecture series, 1.6
References on authority records, 26.5A
Serials, 21.2C

Series tracings

see

Series added entries

Series uniform titles

see

Uniform titles (serials/series)

Service stations, 24.1

Sets

see

Multipart items

Ships

Ambiguous heading, 24.1

Forms of name, 24.4B

Shipyards, 24.1

Signature dates on U.S. Congressional documents, 1.4F2

Sign languages notes, 1.7B2

Signs and symbols, 1.0E

Simple added entries

see

Related work added entries

Single works vs. collections, 25.1

Sizes

see

Dimensions

[S.n.] (nonroman script languages), 1.4D6

Software

see

Electronic resources (uniform titles)

Somalian personal names, 22.8

Sound channels, 6.5C7

Sound recordings

Added entries

*see***Added entries**

Authors'/performers' names preceding individual titles, 6.1B1

Analytical added entries, 21.7B-C

Analytical added entries (excerpts from single works), 25.34

Analytical added entries (not yet complete collections of works by one composer), 25.34

Analytical added entries (omission for non-classical collections), 25.34

Analytical added entries (pop, folk, ethnic, jazz collections), 25.34

Collections (without collective titles—two or more composers), 21.7C

Copyright dates ("c" vs. "p"), 1.4F5, 6.4F1

Descriptions as units when lacking collective titles, 6.1G1

Distributors, 6.4D1

Durations

*see***Durations**

Main entries (collections containing three-five works by one composer), 25.34

Matrix numbers, 6.7B19

Phonogram copyright dates, 1.4F5

Principal performers (main entries), 21.23C

Publishers' numbers (location of notes), 6.7B19

Publishers' numbers (sets or individual discs), 6.7B19

Publishers' numbers (transcription), 6.7B19

Recording and reproduction characteristics (optional transcription in physical description areas), 6.5C8

Specific material designations, 6.5B1

Statements of responsibility (transcription of performers when participation goes beyond performance, execution, interpretation), 6.1F1

Uniform titles (collective—three-five works of one composer), 25.34

Soviet bloc countries "stamps of approval," 24.17**Space vehicles,** 24.1**Spacing conventions**

Abbreviations, 1.0C

Access areas, 1.0C

Bibliographic descriptions, 1.0C

Corporate names, 24.1

Following periods, 1.0C

Initials, initialisms, and acronyms, 1.0C

Initials in corporate names, 24.1

Non-access areas, 1.0C

Personal names, 1.0C, 22.1B

Index

Personal names containing abbreviations or lacking forenames, etc., 22.1B
Personal names containing initials, etc., 22.1B
Personal names entered under elements following prefixes, 22.1B
Title information of items lacking collective titles, 1.1G3

Special letters, 1.0E

Special numbers to serials

Added entries, 21.30G

Specific material designations

Graphic materials, 8.5B1
Sound recordings, 6.5B1
Updating loose-leafs, 12.5B1

Spelling conventions (notes composed by catalogers), 1.7A3

Spirits (forms of name and qualifiers), 22.14

Sporting events, 24.7

Sports teams, 24.4B

"Stamps of approval" (Soviet bloc countries), 24.17

Stamps or labels

Publication information, 1.4A2, 1.4D4
Series statements, 1.6A2

Standard numbers

see also primarily

ISBNs

ISSNs

Items with several numbers, 1.8B2, 12.8B1
Qualifiers, 1.8B2

Statements of responsibility

Edition statements

see

Edition statements

First words of titles proper (title added entries), 21.30J
First words of titles proper (uniform titles needed), 25.3B
Formal contents notes, 2.7B18
Functions to include/exclude, 1.1F1
Guidelines, 1.1F1
Musical presentation statements, 5.2B1
Performers (participation goes beyond performance, execution, interpretation, 6.1F1
Phrases on title pages referring to appendices, subsidiary texts, etc., 1.1E
Multiple corporate bodies with hierarchy (ambiguities), 1.1F4
Series statements, 1.6E1
Single subsequent statements applying to several titles, 1.1G3
Sound recordings, 6.1B1
Transcriptions (partial repetition in multiple languages), 5.1B1

Statements of responsibility vs. titles proper, 6.1B1

States, provinces, etc., as qualifiers, 23.4C

Stores, Retail, 24.1

Strokes below letters, 1.0E

Studies (Research projects), 24.1

Subordinate bodies

see also

Corporate names

Corporate names entered subordinately

Subordinate bodies vs. parent bodies (responsibility for works), 21.1B2

Subscript characters, 1.0E

Subscript periods, 1.0E

Subsequent edition statements

see

Edition statements

Subseries/second series

Applicability, 1.6H

Chief source for series-subseries, 1.6A2

Guidelines, 1.6H

ISSN for main series only, 1.6H7

Main series/subseries appearing in same source, 1.6H

Parallel titles, 1.6H6

Section titles without titles common to all sections, 1.6B

Section titles without titles common to all sections (punctuation), 1.6B

Title change, 1.6H

Subtitles

see

Other title information

Successive entries, 21.3B, 25.5B

see also

Monographic series

Serials

Almanacs (U.S.), 17th-19th century, 21.2C

Session laws, 21.2C

Summaries

Notes, 1.7B2, 2.7B18, 12.7B18

Notes (LC overseas offices), 2.7B17, 12.7B18

Superscript characters, 1.0E

Series numbering, 1.6G

Superscript periods, 1.0E

Index

Supplementary materials

see

Accompanying materials

Supplements to series/serials

Recording, 1.5E1, 21.30G

Section titles (uniform titles), 25.5B

Treatment, 21.30G

Surnames

see also

Personal names

Corporate names, 24.4B

Symbols

Corporate names, 24.1

Publication, distribution, etc., areas information, 1.4A2

Title page transcriptions, 1.0E

Titles proper (access instructions), 21.30J

— T —

Tables of contents

Languages, 1.7B2

Teachers' manuals

see

Accompanying materials

Telephone calls

Personal name conflicts, 22.17

Television programs

see

Radio and television programs

Temporary data (monographs)

Bibliographic volumes issued as one physical volume later expanded to several physical volumes, 2.5B18

Terms of address, etc.

see

Titles of address, etc.

Terms of availability, 1.8, 1.8E1

Rental materials (music), 5.8D1

Terms of honor, etc.

see

Titles of address, etc.

Theses (forms of personal names), 22.3A

Thesis notes

Academic degrees (terms), 1.7B13

Institutions and places, 1.7B13

Thorough basses

see

Continuos (Uniform titles)

Three dots

see

Ellipses

Title added entries

246 field and initial articles, 21.30J

Abbreviations, 21.30J

Alternative titles, 21.30J

Ampersands, 21.30J

"Annual report," 21.30J

Arabic numerals, 21.30J

Binders' titles, 2.7B4

Collective titles, 21.30J

Contractions, 1.0E

Corrected titles, 21.30J

Dates, 21.30J

Guidelines, 21.30J

[i.e.] or [sic], 21.30J

Initial articles omitted, 21.30J

Initialisms or acronyms, 21.30J

Items lacking collective titles, 21.30J

Letters, 21.30J

Limitation on numbers of special cases, 21.30J

MARC tagging information, 21.30J

Non-MARC bibliographic records, 21.30J

Numbers, 21.30J

Other title information, 21.30J

Partial titles, 21.30J

Parts of works, 21.30J

Roman numerals, 21.30J

Romanized titles, 1.7B4

Series statements appearing only on jackets or in bibliographies, 1.6A2

[sic] or [i.e.], 21.30J

Index

Statements of responsibility begin titles proper, 21.30J
Symbols, signs, etc., 1.0E, 21.30J
Titles consisting solely of the words "Annual report," 21.30J
Titles proper consisting of more than one title, 21.30J
Titles similar to headings, 21.30J
Titles that are not sufficiently distinctive, 21.30J
Uniform titles, 21.30J
With uniform title, 21.30J

Title main entries vs. corporate main entries, 21.1B2

Title main entries vs. personal main entries, 21.1C

"Title on added title page" notes, 2.7B4

Title pages

see

Chief sources of information

Series title pages

Titles, parallel

see

Parallel titles

Titles as acronyms or initialisms, 1.1E1

Titles of address, etc.

Coding of a name for AACR2, 22.15B

Cross references (uses and languages), 26.1

Delimiters, 22.1B, 22.5D

Names entered under elements following prefixes, 22.1B

Persons of religious vocations entered under given names, 22.16D

Punctuation and spacing, 22.1B

Resolving conflicts, 22.17, 22.19

Surnames and titles only used, 22.15A

Titles following forename (Mrs.), 22.15B

Titles of nobility as entry elements of names, 22.6

Titles of nobility as entry elements of names (use of forenames, 22.6

Titles proper

Abbreviations of corporate body names as parts of titles proper—serials), 12.1B3

Acronyms or initialisms, 1.1E1

Added entries

see

Title added entries

Access guidelines, 21.30J

Access (items containing more than one title), 21.30J

Acronym/initialism (Serials and integrating resources), 21.30J

Ampersands (first five words), 21.30J

"Annual report," 21.30J

Changes (integrating resources) and ISSNs, 12.7B4.2

-
- Changes (monographic series), 21.2C
 - Changes (multipart items), 21.2A1
 - Changes (serials—definition), 21.2C
 - Changes vs. variations (serials), 21.1A
 - Chronological designations omitted (serials), 12.1B7
 - Common titles and section titles (serials), 12.1B4
 - Conflicts, 25.5B
 - Consisting of name of a type of composition, 1.0
 - Corporate body names included (serials), 12.1B3
 - Credits integrated, 7.1B1
 - Dates, etc., of original publication appearing with titles proper of reprint editions, 1.11C
 - Dates (Japanese), C.5C
 - Dates or numbering at end (serials), 12.1B7
 - Dates or numbering that vary from issue to issue (serials), 12.1B7
 - Definition (items lacking collective titles), 21.30J
 - Documents (capitalization), A.20
 - Electron serials that don't retain earlier titles, 12.7B4.2
 - Elements to include and exclude (serials), 12.1B3
 - [i.e.] or [sic], 21.30J
 - Initial articles, 1.0
 - Introductory wording (Added entry), 21.30J
 - Introductory wording (Capitalization), A.4A1, A.4D1
 - Introductory wording (Reference), 26.5A
 - Introductory wording (Transcription), 1.1B1
 - Legal collections (capitalization), A.20
 - Moving image material, 7.1B1
 - Music (generic titles with partial repetition in multiple languages), 5.1B2
 - Omissions (serials), 12.1B7
 - Popular journals, 1.1B1
 - Section titles (serials), 12.1B4
 - Series title grammatically connected to title of item, 1.6
 - Several languages or scripts, 2.7B4
 - [sic] or [i.e.], 21.30J
 - Signs and symbols (first five words), 21.30J
 - Sound recordings, 6.1B1
 - Statements of responsibility begin (title access instructions), 21.30J
 - Statements of responsibility begin (uniform titles needed), 25.3B

 - Variant titles
 - see*
 - Titles proper (variant forms)**

 - Words in old orthographies, 25.3A

- Titles proper (variant forms), 1.7B4**
 - Access, 21.30J
 - Added title pages, 2.7B4

Index

Binders' titles, 2.7B4
Format of notes, 2.7B4
Hebrew texts (English titles on versos of title pages), 2.7B4
Notes, 1.7B4, 2.7B4
Notes for sources, 2.7B4
Other languages, 2.7B4
Serials, 21.2C
Sources, 2.7B4

Titles proper vs. statements of responsibility, 6.1B1

Tournaments, 24.6

Townships

see

Geographic names

Townships

Conflicts

Townships

Tracings

see

Added entries

Translations

see also

Multilingual works

Added entries for translators, 21.30K1
Collections (uniform titles), 25.11
Notes, 1.7B2
Revised translations (notes), 1.7A4

Travel guides

Monograph vs. serial, 1.0

Treaties, international agreements, etc.

References (form), 25.6C, 26.4B

References in lieu of added entries (conferences), 21.35A2

References in lieu of added entries (other parties), 21.35A1, 21.35A2, 21.35B,
21.35C

References in lieu of added entries (general revisions), 21.35E2

Tribes, 24.1

Tribes (United States Indian), 23.1

Type of issuance, 1.0

— U —

U.S. Board on Geographic Names

BGN forms conflict with established LC headings, 23.2
Brief forms vs. long forms, 23.2
English forms vs. vernacular forms, 23.2
Forms provided, 23.2
BGN romanized forms conflict with ALA/LC romanization tables, 23.2
When to consult, 23.2

U vs. V, 1.0E, 25.1

Unanalyzable multipart items

see

Multipart items

Undertakers, 24.1

UNESCO national commissions, 24.17, 24.18, TYPE 11

Uniform titles (antiquated orthographies), 25.1

Uniform titles (choreographic works), 25.5B

Uniform titles (monographs)

see also

Collective uniform titles

Uniform titles (music)

Uniform title (serials/series)

Access not provided, 21.30J
Additions ("Selections"), 25.9
Additions or corrections, 25.1
Alternative titles omitted, 25.3B
"and" (updating to AACR2), 25.1
Anonymous classics, 25.1
Art works, 25.3A, 25.4A, 25.5B
Brackets, indentions, and punctuation (name authority records), 25.1
Changes to bibliographic records, 25.5B
Collections of two works by one author, 25.7
Collections vs. single works, 25.1
Collective uniform titles for multipart items, 25.5B
Comic strips, 25.5B
Complete literary and musical works of composers, 25.8, 25.10
Conflicting monographic titles, 25.5B
Constitutions, 25.3B
Coutumes homologated as statutes, 21.31B
Customary laws homologated as statutes, 21.31B
Electronic resources, 25.5B
Elements to omit, 25.3B
"Flipping," 26
Form (qualifiers), 25.5B
General material designations, 25.5D
Initial articles, 25.1
Languages used in uniform titles, 25.5C

Index

Languages (liturgical works), 25.19
Laws, 25.15A1, 25.15A2
Laws of changed jurisdictions, 21.31B1
Linking references, 25.1, 25.5B, 26
"Literary works," 25.8
Literary works of composers, 25.8, 25.10
Main entries under name headings, 25.5B
Main entries under titles, 25.5B
Manuscripts (forms and references), 25.13
Monographs published in countries with orthographic reforms, 25.3A
Motion pictures, 25.5B Appendix I
Multilingual works, 25.5C
Numbering, 25.6A2
Part titles entered subordinately (consisting of titles and numbering), 25.6A2
Parts of a work, 25.6A
Parts of a work ("Laws, etc." as uniform titles), 25.12A1
Parts of a work (numbering), 25.6A2
Parts of a work (radio and television series), 25.6B3
Parts of a work (references), 26.4D2
Punctuation (qualifiers), 25.5B
Qualifiers, 25.5B
Qualifiers (law collections), 25.15A1
Radio and television programs, 25.5B Appendix I
Radio and television series, 25.6B3
Reference evaluation, 26
"Selections," 25.8, 25.9
"Selections" (updating to AACR2), 25.1
Single law titles containing names of jurisdictions, 25.15A2
Single works vs. collections, 25.1
Statements of responsibility begin titles proper, 21.30J, 25.3B
Subject compilations lacking collective titles (law), 25.15A1
Successive entries (collections of U.S. states' laws), 25.15A1
Titles proper contain words in old orthographies, 25.3A
Treaties (references), 25.4B, 25.4C, 26.4B
Transcription (note areas), 1.7A4
Translations (partial collections), 25.11
Unpublished works, 25.5C
Updating to AACR2, 25.1, 26
U.S. Bureau of the Census publications, 25.5B
When to make, 25.1, 25.5B
"Works," 25.8
"Works" (updating to AACR2), 25.1
Works in several languages, 25.5C

Uniform titles (music)

Accompaniment for songs, lieder, etc., 25.30B10
Accompanying ensembles (one player/part), 25.30B7
Additions, 25.35

-
- Additions to initial title elements consisting of the name(s) of one or more types of composition, 25.30
- Alternative titles, 25.27
- Arrangements, 25.35C
- Collective uniform titles, 25.5B
- Additions [*rule correction*], 25.35A1
- Entries for three-five works by one composer, 25.34
- Complete musical and literary works of composers, 25.10, 25.8
- Conflict resolution, 25.31B1
- Dates of publication (omission for selections), 25.34
- Form of composition and notes, 5.7B1, 6.7B1
- Groups of instruments, 25.30B5
- Identical to title proper, 25.25
- Individual instruments, 25.30B4
- Initial title element, 25.28
- "Instrumental ensemble" as statements of medium, 25.30B5
- Keyboard instrument terminology for 18th century music (harpsichord vs. piano vs. keyboard instrument), 25.30B4
- Keys—English used, 25.30D
- Language, 25.35F
- Liturgical titles (generic terms), 25.29A
- Liturgical titles (omission of media of performance), 25.29A
- Medium of performance and notes, 5.7B1, 6.7B1
- Mélodie vs. melody, 25.29A
- Motion picture music (single composer collections), 25.34C2
- Musical instrument terminology, 25.30B4, 25.30B5
- Musical works of literary writers, 25.10, 25.8
- Opus numbers, 25.30C3
- Ordinal numbers, C.8
- Parts of a work, 25.32A1, 25.32B1
- Parts of larger works
- see*
- Excerpts
- "Plucked instruments" vs. "Plectral instruments," 25.30B5
- Post-nineteenth-century works, 25.30D2
- References for collective titles, 26.4B4
- References for titles of parts cataloged under the title of the whole work, 26.4B3
- Revised, transcribed, recomposed, reordered, altered, etc., versions of an earlier work, 25.25A
- Selection of title, 25.27A1, 25.27A1, footnote 10
- Selections, 25.34B1
- Selections and works of various types in one broad or specific medium and works of one type for one specific medium or various media, 25.34B-25.34C
- Consecutively numbered, 25.34C3
- Keyboard music, 25.34C1
- Trio sonatas and other sonatas, 25.34C2

Index

Serial numbers, 25.30C2
Singulars or plurals (first occurrence of particular types), 25.29A
Singulars to plurals, 25.29A
Solo instruments and accompanying ensemble, 25.30B7
Standard combinations of instruments, 25.30B3
Statements of medium for masses or requiems, 25.30B1
Titles including the name of a type of composition, 25.27D1
Vocal and chorus scores, 25.35D1

Uniform titles (serials/series), 25.5B

Additions, 25.5B
Changes of issuing bodies, 25.5B
Changes (qualifiers), 25.5B
Choice (qualifiers), 25.5B
Common/section titles, 25.5B
Conflicts, 25.5B
Corporate names as qualifiers, 25.5B
Corporate name as uniform titles, 25.5B
Dates as qualifier, 25.5B
Edition statements as qualifiers, 25.5B
Electronic resources, 25.5B
Form (qualifiers), 25.5B
Guidelines, 25.5B
Linking references, 25.5B, 26.5A
Numbering grammatically integrated with title proper, 25.5B
Part titles, 25.5B
Places of publication as qualifiers, 25.5B
Published in more than one place, 25.5B
Punctuation (qualifiers), 25.5B
Qualifiers, 25.5B
References, 26.5A
Related series, 21.30G
Reprints, microfilms, etc., 25.5B
Series consisting solely of corporate body names or initials, 25.5B
Series/subseries situations, 25.5B
Successive entries, 25.5B
Supplements, 25.5B
Supplements involved in uniform titles, 25.5B
Title changes or title variations, 21.2C
When to make, 25.5B

Unit descriptions for sound recordings lacking collective titles, 6.1G1

United Nations

Government body, 24.17

United States. Congress

Numbering in headings, 24.21D
Documents (single dates vs. title page dates), 1.4F2

United States Postal Service abbreviations, B.14

Universities

Statewide system names contained in names, 24.13, TYPE 6

Unit names indicating fields of study, 24.13, TYPE 5
University libraries named for persons, 24.2

Unpaged items, 2.5B7

Unpublished works (uniform titles), 25.5C

Updates issued for publications, 2.5B9

Updates

see

Loose-leaf items

Updating bibliographic records

Monographs with title main entries requiring uniform titles, 25.5B

Motion pictures requiring uniform titles as main or secondary entries, 25.5B
Appendix I

Multipart items

see

Multipart items

Uniform titles, 25.1

Updating pre-AACR2 headings

see also

Reference evaluation

Additions within parentheses of full forms of initials used in headings, 22.18A

Conferences/meetings, 26

Corporate headings AACR2 except for punctuation of a series of words, 24.2

Earlier forms of corporate names in AACR2 form in 667 field, 26.3

Headings valid before particular dates, 26

Linking reference technique, 26

Multiple pre-AACR2 headings become single AACR2 headings, 26

One-for-one correspondence of bibliographic headings and authority records, 26

Quotation mark usages, 24.1

Series, 24.1

Single pre-AACR2 headings becomes multiple AACR2 headings, 26

Uniform titles, 26

Use in related work added entries, 21.30G

Updating uniform title headings for serials (qualifier policy changes), 25.5B

Utility districts, 23.1

— V —

V vs. U, 1.0E, 25.1

"V.I.," B.14

Index

Variant forms of ...

see

... (variant forms)

Variant titles

see

Titles proper (variant forms)

Vernacular forms of geographic names provided by BGN (list of English forms used), 23.2

Versos of title pages containing publishing information, 1.4D4

Vocal score

Definition, Appendix D

Vocalized title pages, 1.7B2

Voice range

Song, song cycle, or set or collection of songs bearing a statement designating the voice range, 5.2B2

Volume designations

see also

Extent of items

Series numbering

Serials

Formal contents notes, 2.7B18

VV vs. W, 1.0E

— W —

W. vs. VV, 1.0E

Washington, D.C., vs. District of Columbia in headings, 23.2

Water districts, 23.1

Web sites

see

Integrating resources

"With" notes, 1.7B21

Works issued separately

Bound together, 1.7B21

Works of art

Uniform titles, 25.3A, 25.4A, 25.5B

Works to be updated (e.g., legal services), 2.5B9

World Wide Web

see

Integrating resources

Writers and composers, 25.8, 25.10

— X —

Xerox copies

see

Macroreproductions

— Z —

Zoogeographic regions (capitalization), A.15A

Zoological gardens, 24.1